

DATE LABEL

THE ASIATIC SOCIETY
1, Park Street Calcutta-16

The Book is to be returned on
the date last stamped :

22 . 8 . 56

EDUCATIONAL WORKS

The Modern German Series.

A Primer of German Grammar.

By SOMERVILLE AND BYRNE. 2s. net.

Primary German Exercises.

By the same. 2s. net.

A First German Writer.

By the same. 3s. 6d.

Primary German Translation and Exercise Book.

By H. S. BERESFORD-WEBB. 2s. net.

Beginners' Texts. 9d. each.

Selections from Hebel's *Schatzkästlein*. MORICH.

Deutsches Allerlei. MORICH.

Lustige Geschichten. MORICH.

Erzählungen aus der Römischen Geschichte. LYON.

Leichte Lesestücke. SIEPMANN.

Ulysses und der Kyklop. BÜCKER.

Elementary Texts. 1s. each.

Weihnachten bei Leberecht Hühnchen. SEIDEL.

Episodes from Andreas Hofer. OTTO HOFFMANN.

Bilder aus der Türkei. GRÜBER.

Die Werke der Barmherzigkeit. RIEHL.

Die wandelnde Glocke. FIECHTER.

Der Besuch im Carcer. ECKSTEIN.

Fritz auf dem Lande. ARNOLD.

Advanced Texts. 2s. each.

Harold. Trauerspiel in fünf Akten. WILDENBURGH.

Kolberg. Historisches Schauspiel in fünf Akten. HEYSE.

Robert Blake (Ein Seestück) und Cromwell, Zwei Ausgewählte Aufsätze. PAULI.

Die Lehrjahre eines Humanisten. RIEHL.

Meister Martin Hildebrand. RIEHL.

Aus dem Jahrhundert des Grossen Krieges. ERKERTAG.

Das deutsche Ordensland Preussen. TRETSCHKE.

By A. R. LECHNER.

Easy Readings in German. 2s.

Schrammen's Tales of the Gods and Heroes of Ancient Greece. 2s.

Schrammen's German Heroes of the Middle Ages. 2s.

German Prose Composition.

For Middle and Upper Forms of Schools. By R. J. MORICH. 4s. 6d.

By H. S. BERESFORD-WEBB.

Niebuhr's Stories of Greek Heroes. 1s. 6d.

Goethe's Italienische Reise. 2s.

Schiller's Nephew as Uncle. 1s. 6d.

Storm's Immensee. 2s.

How to Prepare Essays, Lectures, Articles, Books, Speeches, and Letters. By E. H. MILES. 2s. net.

A Short Spelling Manual for the Use of Preparatory Schools. By W. W. CHERITON. 1s.

Ballad and other Poetry. Compiled by H. R. HEATLEY. 1s. 6d.

English Classics for Schools.

Grade I. Each Vol. 6d. net.

Burns, Byron, & Campbell's Shorter Poems.

English Ballads (FIRST SERIES).

English Ballads (SECOND SERIES).

Macaulay's Essay on Clive.*

Macaulay's Essay on Warren Hastings.*

Scott's Ivanhoe. 2 Vols.

Scott's Kenilworth.*

Scott's Lady of the Lake. 3 Vols.

Scott's Lay of the Last Minstrel. 2 Vols.

Scott's Talisman.*

Wordsworth's Shorter Poems.

Grade II. Each Vol. 10d. net.

Anson's Voyage Round the World.*

Byron's Childe Harold.*

Cantos III, IV.

Cook's Voyages.*

Dampier's Voyage Round the World.*

Defoe's Plague of London.*

Longfellow's Evangeline.

Milton's Paradise Lost. 2 Vols.

Pope's Iliad. 3 Vol.

Prescott's Conquest of Mexico. 2 Vols.

Grade III. Each Vol. from 1s. 4d. net.

Burke on America. 1s. 6d. net.

Burke on French Revolution.*

Selection from Lamb's Essays.

Macaulay's History. The First Chapter.

More's Utopia.*

*The text of these books is reduced.

**SIR WALTER BURNER
COLLECTION.**

GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION

BY THE SAME AUTHORS

Crown 8vo. 3*s. 6d.*

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

For the use of Middle Forms of Schools

'Altogether this is one of the best books on Latin Prose Composition that we have yet come across. We strongly recommend it.'—*Saturday Review*.

'Deserves the fullest consideration of schoolmasters. . . . Schoolmasters will do well to look at this volume very carefully.'—*Guardian*.

'We have formed a distinctly favourable opinion of this neat and well-arranged manual.'—*Schoolmaster*.

LONDON : RIVINGTONS.

SIR WALTER SCURVY
COLLECTION.

GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION
FOR SCHOOLS

BY

M. A. NORTH, M.A.

ASSISTANT MASTER AT CLIFTON COLLEGE

AND

THE REV. A. E. HILLARD, M.A.

HEADMASTER OF DURHAM SCHOOL

AUTHORS OF "LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION FOR MIDDLE FORMS OF SCHOOLS"

FIFTH IMPRESSION

(Fourth Edition)

RIVINGTONS
34 KING STREET, COVENT GARDEN
LONDON

1904



P R E F A C E

THIS book follows the lines of the same authors' Latin Prose Composition. It is intended to cover the work of Fourth and Fifth Forms in Public Schools, and is carefully graduated throughout. Every exercise has been expressly written for the place in which it stands, and no construction is introduced which has not already been learnt. Connected pieces are given together with sentence exercises from the beginning, and exercises for revision occur at regular intervals. As in the Latin book each exercise is marked (*A*) or (*B*). This is to divide the section assigned to a form into two terms' work. Either the (*A*) exercises or the (*B*) exercises will make a complete course and contain sufficient practice in constructions, but it is recommended that the Vocabularies of both (*A*) and (*B*) exercises should be learnt in any case.

The Vocabularies for the separate exercises are placed at the end of the book and are meant to be learnt. The authors regard this as an important point, for there is no doubt that ignorance of common words is a constant source of weakness in Composition. A General Vocabulary has been added collecting all the words given in the Special Vocabularies (p. 244). This is meant to assist short memories, but not to supply again Genders, Genitives, etc., which should have been learnt in the Special Vocabularies.

The Principal Parts of the Irregular Verbs required are given in an Appendix (pp. 223-228). Other Appendices contain (1) a list of the Compounds of some of the commonest verbs (pp. 229-231); (2) a list of Prepositions with their prose usages (pp. 232-236); (3) a table of the commonest Particles (pp. 237-8); (4) the chief rules for Accentuation (pp. 239-243).

The authors have obtained a great deal of help from Goodwin's *Moods and Tenses*, Thompson's *Syntax of Attic Greek*, and other books too numerous to mention. Their thanks for valuable suggestions and criticisms are specially due to their colleagues, the Rev. H. J. Wiseman and Mr. W. W. Asquith; also to the Rev. W. A. Heard, Head-master of Fettes, the Hon. and Rev. E. Lyttelton, Head-master of Haileybury, the Rev. Dr. W. A. Fearon, Head-master of Winchester, Mr. F. E. Thompson of Marlborough, Mr. R. Whitelaw of Rugby, Professor Gilbert Murray of Glasgow University, and Mr. C. H. Garland of Haileybury.

M. A. NORTH.

A. E. HILLARD.

CLIFTON COLLEGE,

June 21st, 1898.

PREFACE TO FOURTH EDITION

IN the second, third, and fourth editions we have added a few words in the Vocabularies, and have made one or two emendations suggested by those who are using the book.

June 30th, 1902.

CONTENTS

	PAGES
PREFACE	v
THE ARTICLE	1-3
THE POSITION OF THE ARTICLE	4-7
AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES AND VERBS	8-9
TENSES IN THE INDICATIVE	10-11
TENSES IN THE PARTICIPLES	12-13
THE MIDDLE VOICE	14-17
AGENT AND INSTRUMENT	18-19
PLACE	20-22
TIME AND SPACE	23-25
COMPARISON	26-29
EXERCISES FOR REVISION	30-33
 -	
GENITIVE ABSOLUTE	34-37
PRONOUNS	38-43
CONNECTION	44, 45
EXERCISES FOR REVISION	46, 47
INDIRECT STATEMENT	48-55
EXERCISES FOR REVISION	56, 57
 -	
DIRECT QUESTIONS	58-61
INDIRECT QUESTIONS	62-67
GENITIVE CASE AFTER VERBS	68-71
DATIVE CASE	72, 73
ACCUSATIVE CASE	74-77
COMMANDS, EXHORTATIONS, WISHES	78, 79
NEGATIVES	80, 81
INDIRECT COMMANDS	82, 83
SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT SPEECH	84-86
EXERCISES FOR REVISION	87-89

	PAGES
CAUSAL CLAUSES	90, 91
USE OF TENSES IN THE MOODS	92, 93
FINAL SENTENCES	94-97
VERBS OF FEARING AND PRECAUTION	98, 99
CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES	100-105
EXERCISES FOR REVISION	106-111
<hr/>	
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES	112-121
PARTICIPLES	122-127
IMPERSONAL VERBS—ACCUSATIVE ABSOLUTE	128, 129
VERBAL ADJECTIVES	130-132
PRONOUNS	133-138
PREPOSITIONS	139-142
EXERCISES FOR REVISION	143-147
<hr/>	
INDEFINITE CONSTRUCTION	148, 149
TEMPORAL CLAUSES	150-159
VERBS OF PREVENTING	160, 161
SUMMARY OF THE USES OF <i>οὐ</i> AND <i>μή</i>	162-165
EXERCISES FOR REVISION	166-169
<hr/>	
SUMMARY OF THE USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND OPTATIVE	170-175
WISHES IN PRESENT AND PAST TENSE	176, 177
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN ORATIO OBLIQUA	178-185
SUMMARY OF THE USES OF THE INFINITIVE	186-189
EXERCISES FOR REVISION	190-196
<hr/>	
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES	197-221
PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS	222-228
COMPOUND VERBS	229-231
COMMON PROSE USAGES OF PREPOSITIONS	232-236
PARTICLES	237, 238
THE CHIEF RULES FOR ACCENTS	239-243
GENERAL VOCABULARY	244-266

THE ARTICLE

1. The Article is used sometimes in Greek where it is not used in English :—

(a) With Nouns denoting whole classes.

e.g. *οἱ θῆρες*, *wild beasts*; *οἱ ἄνθρωποι*, *mankind*.

(b) Often with abstract Nouns and proper names, especially the names of countries.

e.g. *ἡ ἀνδρεία*, *courage*; *ἡ Ἑλλάς*, *Greece*.

2. The Article used with an Adjective or Adverb, or with an Infinitive, makes it a Noun.

e.g. *τὸ ἀληθές*, *truth*; *οἱ ἀνδρεῖοι*, *brave men*; *τὸ λέγειν*, *speech*; *τῷ λέγειν*, *by speaking*; *οἱ πάλαι*, *the men of old*.

3. Participles, like Adjectives, when used with the Article, are equivalent to Nouns.

e.g. *οἱ λέγοντες*, *speakers*, or *those who speak*.

οἱ τεθνηκότες, *the dead*, or *those who have died*.

This is constantly the Greek equivalent for an English Relative clause.

e.g. *τιμῶμεν τοὺς στρατιώτας τοὺς ὑπὲρ τῆς πόλεως τεθνηκότας*.

We honour the soldiers who have died for their city.

Exercise 1 [A].

1. Greeks are always brave.
2. Greece was formerly free.
3. Brave men are honoured.
4. Hope gives men courage.
5. Truth is often strange.
6. Speaking is difficult to me.
7. He thinks lying base.
8. A rich man has many friends.
9. A brave man conquers difficulties.
10. Victory harms many men.

11. Men of the present day are braver.

12. Men here do not believe me.

Exercise 2 [B].

1. Wise men honour truth.
2. Greeks are not willing to obey barbarians.
3. Speaking well is difficult.
4. Ships are safe in harbours.
5. We wish to free Greece.
6. Good men admire wisdom.
7. By obeying wise men we become wise.
8. By victory we become free.
9. Free men do not admire slavery.
10. The men of old used to admire wisdom.
11. The people here do not honour courage.

THE POSITION OF THE ARTICLE

4. (a) An Adjective as an ordinary attribute comes usually between the Article and the Noun.

e.g. ὁ ἀγαθὸς ἄνηρ, *the brave man.*

But this may also be expressed by—

ὁ ἄνηρ ὁ ἀγαθός.

(b) In any other position the Adjective is a Predicate.

e.g. ὁ ἄνηρ ἀγαθός (ἐστιν), }
 ἀγαθός (ἐστιν) ὁ ἄνηρ. } *The man is brave.*¹

5. All attributive phrases naturally take the same position as the Adjective in 4 (a).

e.g. οἱ τῶν Ἀθηναίων² πόλις, *the city of the Athenians.*

οἱ ἐν τοῖς τείχεσι στρατιώται, *the soldiers on the walls.*

So also οἱ εὖ λέγοντες, *those who speak well, good speakers.*

¹ Notice that this rule applies to such sentences as—

ἵδειαν ἔχει τὴν φωνήν, *he has a pleasant voice.*

Δπαντες θυητὸν ἔχομεν τὸ σῶμα, *we all have a mortal body.*

The adjective here adds a fresh assertion or predicate, e.g. “We all have a body, and it is mortal.”

The Article often distinguishes the Subject from its Complement—

e.g. νὺξ ἡ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, *day became night.*

² Notice that the dependent Genitive (unless a proper name) generally has the Article if the Noun on which it depends has the Article, e.g. τὸ τῆς ἀρετῆς κάλλος.

Exercise 3 [A].

1. The soldiers of the Athenians died bravely.
2. Men of old used to honour good speakers.
3. The army in the city was not willing to fight.
4. Those who fled came to the city.
5. Those who said this were lying.
6. Those who stood¹ in the streets escaped.
7. The herald had a loud voice.
8. Many of the noblest Athenians perished.
9. They destroyed the walls which had just been made.
10. They used to bring out into the streets those who were sick.
11. The women have graceful hands.
12. They sent back the Athenians who were in the army.

¹ Perf. Part. of *Ιστημι*.

Exercise 4 [B].

1. We always honour good speakers.
2. Those who have died for their¹ city are worthy of honour.
3. The ships which are in the harbour are safe.
4. Greeks will not obey the soldiers of the king.
5. Those who fled from the city are not brave.
6. Hope gives courage to those who are fighting for the city.
7. Lions have sharp teeth.
8. The sons of wise fathers are not always wise.
9. Good citizens give money to the wives of soldiers who have died for their country.
11. The general whom we obey is brave.
12. We honour the men who freed Greece.

Exercise 5 [A].

1. Men of the present day honour the heroes of old.
2. Rich men give money to those who are poor.
3. Truth is not always easy for clever speakers.
4. The wives of the citizens did not honour those who fled from the battle.
5. The leaders of the Greeks destroyed the walls of the city

¹ The Possessive need not be expressed where there is no ambiguity. The Article here is sufficient.

6. The soldiers who escaped to the city are now safe.
7. The citizens wished to destroy the ships which had come (*Aorist*) into the harbour.
8. Those who fight bravely on behalf of their¹ country are worthy of the greatest honour.
9. Soldiers are saved by fighting bravely rather than by flying.
10. We honour the orators who wish to save Greece.

Exercise 6 [B].

1. Those who fight best will conquer.
2. They conquered men who fought more bravely.
3. They made the walls of the city stronger.
4. Wild beasts obeyed him.
5. The enemy's victory destroyed² the hope of the citizens.
6. They became rich by lying.
7. The general of the enemy freed the soldiers who fought bravely.
8. The ships that sailed never arrived.
9. The Athenians killed the women who betrayed the city.
10. I think fighting wrong.

¹ See p. 6, note.

² καταλύω.

A G R E E M E N T

6. The rules for agreement both of Adjectives and of Verbs are the same as in Latin,¹ except that :

(a) Neuter Plural subjects have their verbs in the Singular, unless they represent a number of *persons*.

e.g. ταῦτα παύσεται, these things will cease.

but τὰ τέλη κελεύουσι, the magistrates order.

(b) Greek has a Dual Number, but in speaking of two persons or things the Plural may be used as well as the Dual, and a Dual subject may have a Plural Verb.

e.g. ἀπέθανον οἱ δύο στρατηγοί.

The two generals were killed.

The Dual is especially used of things considered as a pair :

e.g. τὰ ὄφθαλμά, the eyes.

¹ Therefore in dealing with a Predicate that has two or more subjects—

(a) with regard to Person—the 1st is preferred to the 2nd and the 2nd to the 3rd ;

(b) with regard to Number—the Predicate may be plural or may be singular in agreement with the nearest subject ;

(c) with regard to Gender—if the subjects are persons the masculine is preferred to the feminine ; if the subjects are things the predicate may agree with the nearest subject, or, if the plural be used, is put in the neuter.

E.g. καὶ ὁ ἄνὴρ καὶ ἡ γυνὴ ἀγαθοί εἰσιν.

καὶ ὁ ἄνὴρ ἀγαθός ἐστι καὶ ἡ γυνή.

Both the man and his wife are good.

τῶν κακῶν ἡ στάσις καὶ ὁ πόλεμος αἴτιος ἐστι.

Both sedition and war are the cause of our troubles.

Observe also that with disjunctives *ἢ . . . ἢ*, (*either . . . or*), *οὔτε . . . οὔτε* (*neither . . . nor*), the Predicate should agree with the nearest subject.

Exercise 7.

1. Living creatures are not always beautiful.
2. Both the men and the women are small.
3. Trees and flowers grow in this island.
4. The two generals were killed by the enemy.
5. The two armies were fighting.
6. Gold and silver are brought to the market.
7. Many missiles were thrown by the enemy.
8. Two friends gave me the present.
- * 9. Children are dear to their fathers.
10. Corn and wine are useful to men.
11. I gave them the money, the gift of the king.
12. Nicias and Demosthenes, two brave soldiers, were (both) killed.
13. These are the gifts of Callias, the Athenian general.

TENSES IN THE INDICATIVE

7. The Imperfect and Aorist tenses of the Indicative both express actions as having occurred in past time; but the Imperfect expresses the action as continuing or being repeated, while the Aorist simply states that it occurred.

e.g. ἔγραφον, *I was writing, I used to write, I wrote.*

ἔγραψα, *I wrote.*

πᾶσαν τὴν ἡμέραν ἐπορεύοντο καὶ ὥψε ηὐλίσαντο.
They were marching (marched) all day and encamped late.

8. The Aorist is frequently used where English uses the Pluperfect, so long as a single action and not a state is implied. This is especially the case in Relative and Temporal sentences.

e.g. ἐπεὶ ήλθον ηὐλίσαντο.

When they had come (or Having come,) they encamped.

9. The Perfect expresses a state resulting from completed action.

e.g. ὁ Κῦρος τέθνηκε, *Cyrus is dead.*

Many perfects are therefore equivalent to English Presents
e.g. ἔστηκα, *I stand* (literally, *I have placed myself*), μέμνημαι,
I remember (literally, *I have called to mind*).

Exercise 8 [A].

1. The soldiers were killed by the missiles. ✓
2. The citizens used to give many presents to the king. ✓
3. The women and the children are standing on the wall. ✓
4. The ships always brought corn into the harbour. ✓
5. When the army had been conquered, the city was taken.
6. Many men and women were standing in the market-place.
7. When the ships had sailed into the harbour, they were safe.
8. We always honoured good speakers.
9. The Greeks often conquered the Persians.
10. Cyrus was killed by his brother's soldiers.

Exercise 9 [B].

1. The enemy destroyed the army of the Athenians.
2. The men of old honoured the brave.
3. When the general arrived, he was killed.
4. When the sailors arrived, they used to remain in the city.
5. The Athenians and their wives are standing in the market-place.
6. The man and his wife are dead.
7. The women and children were killed by the missiles.
8. The heroes of old always fought bravely.
9. The ships remained all day in the harbour.
10. We used to honour those who fought bravely.

TENSES IN THE PARTICIPLES

10. The Present Participle denotes an action as going on at the same time as the action of the Principal Verb.

e.g. ἀπέθανε καθεύδων, *he died while sleeping.*

The Aorist Participle generally represents an action as having occurred before the action of the Principal Verb. It will therefore frequently translate the English Perfect Participle.

e.g. ἐλθὼν οἴκαδε ἀπέθανε, *having returned home, he died.*

The Perfect Participle, like the Perfect Indicative, denotes a Present state as the result of action in the Past.

e.g. οἱ τεθνηκότες τιμῶνται, *the dead are honoured.*

Compare with this—

ἔθαψαν τοὺς Μαραθῶνι ἀποθανόντας.

They buried those who died at Marathon.

Exercise 10 [A].

1. The enemy attacked them while marching.
2. Being always attacked, the citizens were in distress.
3. They were not willing to march.
4. The general ordered them to attack, but they did not obey.

5. When they had made a camp, they awaited the enemy.
6. He was killed while crossing the river.
7. Hearing this they fled.
8. They were often seen entering the town.
9. Those who had been asked answered.
10. When they had arrived at the town, they were caught.

Exercise 11 [B].

1. The ships which had arrived were destroyed.
2. The enemy attacked the soldiers as they were marching.
3. The soldiers always fought bravely, and they were never¹ defeated.
4. The enemy destroyed the ships which had sailed out of the harbour.
5. The army, having come to the walls of the city, encamped.
6. The city was being destroyed, and the citizens were flying.
7. The Greeks defeated a great army of the Persians.
8. The Greeks often fought bravely against² the Persians and defecated them.
9. Many ships were taken as they were coming from the harbour.
10. Having conquered the enemy, the soldiers were marching to the city.

¹ And . . . never, οὐδέ . . . ποτε.

² Against is expressed by the Dat. here.

THE MIDDLE VOICE

11. The Middle Voice is Reflexive, but not so often in the sense of doing a thing to oneself as in the sense of doing a thing for oneself or getting a thing done for oneself. It is generally equivalent therefore to the Active Voice with the *Dative* of the Reflexive Pronoun.

E.g. φέρω, I bring.

*φέρομαι (I bring for myself),
I win.*

διδάσκω, I teach.

*διδάσκομαι τὸν νιόν.
I have my son taught.*

παύω, I stop (transitive).

*παύομαι, I stop myself.
I stop (intransitive).*

*e.g. ἐπαυσαν τὸν πόλεμον.
They ended the war.*

*ἐπαύσαντο τοῦ πολέμου.
They desisted from the war.*

ἀμύνω τῇ πόλει.

I keep off (the enemy) from the city.

I defend the city.

ἀμύνομαι τοὺς πολεμίους.

I resist the enemy (i.e. keep him off myself).

εἷλον ταύτην τὴν πόλιν.

They took this city.

εἷλοντο ταύτην τὴν βίβλον.

They chose this book (i.e. took it for themselves).

Exercise 12 [A].

1. They saved their wives and children.
2. They sold the house of Demosthenes
3. Alcibiades won many prizes.
4. They put an end to the battle.
5. Socrates taught the sons of the Athenians.
6. The sun appeared.
7. He showed the present to his father.
8. They ceased from the battle.
9. The Athenians were resisting the Persians bravely.
10. They ransomed the citizens (who had been captured.)
11. They chose Nicias general.

Exercise 13 [B].

1. The storm quickly stopped the battle.
2. The sailors sold the fish to the citizens.
3. We will ransom the sons of the general.
4. We will defend our city against the enemy.
5. You win many prizes at the games.
6. These presents appear to me most beautiful.
7. We will show this to the citizens.
8. We will now desist from the war.
9. They resisted the enemy bravely.
10. I kept my money safe.
11. I gave back the money to the judge.
12. They chose the best men as leaders.

Exercise 14 [A].

1. The soldiers chose Nicias (as) general.
2. The books were chosen by the children.
3. The battle was stopped by the general.
4. Having been often conquered, they desisted from the war.
5. These things were heard by the citizens.
6. Those who had perished were buried.
7. The army was saved by Callias.
8. Those who attacked us were taken.
9. They were seen by the enemy (when) crossing the river.
10. The presents were given back to the children.

Exercise 15 [B].

1. Having sailed away, the Athenians were saved.
2. The battle was stopped by a storm.
3. The Athenians were set free, and ransomed their slaves.
4. The walls were taken.
5. They were ordered to attack the enemy.
6. Having attacked the enemy, they were beaten.
7. The army was increased as it entered the country.
8. The messengers who had been sent brought back much corn.
9. The city was destroyed and the citizens perished.
10. They stopped fighting.

AGENT AND INSTRUMENT

12. The person by whom a thing is done is expressed by *ὑπό* with the Genitive Case.

The instrument by which or the cause through which a thing is done is expressed by the Dative Case.¹

e.g. *ἡ γέφυρα ἐλύθη ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων.*

The bridge was broken down by the enemy.

διώλεσε τὸν ἄνδρα τοῖς φαρμάκοις.

She killed her husband by poison.

Exercise 16 [A].

1. The camp was besieged by the enemy with all his forces.
2. They killed him with stones when he was already wounded.
3. By whom were the gates opened ?
4. He conquered the Athenians by his skill.
5. They were ordered by the general to cross the river.
6. They crossed the river by means of the bridge.
7. Messengers sent by the king betrayed the town.
8. He ransomed his father with a large sum of money.²
9. They saved the citizens by the ships.
10. The country is being destroyed by the Persians.

¹ In certain cases the Agent can be expressed by the Dative--
(a) after the 3rd Person Perfect and Pluperfect Passive and the Perfect Participle Passive--

e.g. *ταῦτα τετέλεσται σοι, this has been accomplished by you;*
(b) after the Verbal Adjective. See Rule 53, page 130.

The instrument, especially if it is a person, may also be expressed by *διά* with the Genitive.

e.g. *δι' ἀγγέλων ἔπεισε τὸν Ἀθηναίον.*

He persuaded the Athenians by means of messengers.

² A large sum of money = *πολλὰ χρήματα.*

Exercise 17 [B].

1. The great army of the Persians was defeated by the Greeks.
2. The boys pelted the orator with stones.
3. The traitor was killed by stones hurled by the citizens.
4. Many of the soldiers were wounded by the arrows.
5. The Athenians, having been caught by the enemy, were killed.
6. They were defeated many times, and desisted from the war.
7. The bravest of the soldiers were killed by the missiles of the enemy.
8. Those who win prizes in the games are honoured by the citizens.
9. The Athenians wished to ransom the soldiers who had been taken by the enemy.
10. The bridge was broken by the storm.

PLACE

13. Place is usually expressed in Greek by Prepositions. 'Place whither' generally requires a Preposition with the Accusative, 'place whence' a Preposition with the Genitive, and 'place where' a Preposition with the Dative.¹

e.g. *to* }
into }
against }
the city {
πρὸς }
εἰς }
ἐπὶ }
τὴν πόλιν.

to the king ὡς τὸν βασιλέα
 (ὡς of persons only.)

from }
out of }
the city {
ἀπὸ }
ἐκ }
τῆς πόλεως.

from the king παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως
 (παρά is used especially of persons.)

in the city ἐν τῇ πόλει.

at }
near }
the city {
πρὸς }
τῇ πόλει.

But Greek has remains of certain old cases expressing place :—

- (1) The Locative Case expressing *place where* with the termination *-ι*, e.g. *οἴκοι*, *at home*; *Μαραθῶνι*, *at Marathon*.
- (2) The termination *-θεν* signifying *place whence*, e.g. *οἴκοθεν*, *from home*; *Αθήνηθεν*, *from Athens*; *ἄλλοθεν*, *from elsewhere*.
- (3) The termination *-δε* or *-σε* signifying *place whither*, e.g. *οἴκαδε*, *homewards*; *Αθήναζε*, *to Athens*; *ἄλλοσε*, *to another place*.

¹ But the uses of *ἐπὶ* to express place require special notice—

e.g. *ἐπὶ τῆς τραπέζης*, *upon the table*.
ἐπὶ τῆς Νάξου, *towards Naxos*.

Exercise 18 [A].

1. The ships sailed from Athens towards the Hellespont.
2. The soldiers who had been captured by the enemy were sent home.
3. The soldiers on the walls were killed by the arrows.
4. Messengers were sent by the Greeks to the king.
5. The messengers who had come from Thebes announced these things to the Spartans.
6. Those who remained at home saw the soldiers who had arrived from the island.
7. The general and his followers were killed by the traitors.
8. The ships arrived at Athens bringing many presents from the king.
9. The army which was marching against the city was destroyed by a great storm.
10. The soldiers who died at Marathon were greatly honoured by the Athenians.

Exercise 19 [B].

1. The traitors who had come from the king were put to death at Athens.
2. Those who sailed from the city reached the mainland safely.
3. An army was sent from Plataea to the Athenians at Marathon.¹
4. Many Greeks marched with Cyrus from Sardis against the King of Persia.²
5. The Spartans killed the messenger who was sent to Sparta from the King.
6. The enemy kept attacking the soldiers as they were marching homewards.
7. The ships which had been sent against Greece by the Persians were destroyed.
8. Money was sent to Athens from the islands.
9. The slave was sent from Sparta to the Thebans.
10. Those who had come to the island from the mainland were put to death by traitors.
11. The ships were sailing towards Greece.

¹ Translate ‘*being at Marathon*’.

² βασιλεύς (without the Article)=*the King of Persia*.

T I M E

14. The cases in Greek are used to express time without any preposition.

'Duration of time' is expressed by the Accusative.

e.g. *τρεῖς μῆνας ἐνόστει*, *he was ill for 3 months.*

'Time when' is expressed by both Genitive and Dative, but with a difference, the Genitive expressing 'the time within which' something occurs, the Dative 'the point of time at which' it occurs.

e.g. *ταύτης τῆς νυκτὸς ἐνόσησε*, *he fell ill in the course of (during) this night.*

τῇ τετάρτῃ ήμέρᾳ ἀπέθανε, *he died on the 4th day.*

S P A C E

15. Extent of space is expressed, as in Latin, by the Accusative case.

e.g. *δέκα στάδια ἐπορεύθησαν*.

They marched 10 stades.

δέκα στάδια ἀπέχει (ἀπὸ) τῶν Ἀθηνῶν.

It is distant 10 stades from Athens.

Height, breadth, etc., are generally expressed by the Genitive and an Accusative of Respect.

e.g. *τεῖχος εἴκοσι ποδῶν τὸ ὕψος*.

A wall twenty feet in height.

Exercise 20 [A].

1. Having encamped all the night, they set out at daybreak.
2. He was killed at night while sleeping.
3. The army having set out by night reached the city before morning.
4. In the course of the day the army marched 95¹ stades.
5. On the fourteenth day the army encamped near the city.
6. They crossed a river 105 feet broad.
7. On the second day he ran twelve parasangs.
8. The camp was distant many stades from the city.
9. The Greeks set out early and came to the camp towards evening, having marched all day.
10. In the winter the armies encamped for a long time.
11. Three times in the year we used to see them.
12. He was carrying a spear 12 feet long.

¹ In Greek, compound numbers after 20 may be expressed in three ways :—

- (1) The larger precedes the smaller without *kai*.
- (2) The larger precedes the smaller with *kai*.
- (3) The smaller precedes the larger with *kai*.

Exercise 21 [B].

1. Having marched 25 stades they remained all night near the river.
2. On the 14th day they reached Sardis.
3. They started from Sparta at dawn and reached Athens in the evening on the following day.
4. In this summer the Athenians were defeated both by land and sea.
5. The harbour is five stades from the city.
6. Having ruled eight years he died.
7. On the 29th day of this month, the Persians entered Athens.
8. Here there was a wall 75 feet high.
9. He came to my house in the course of the night.
10. On the return of spring another battle took place.
11. In winter war ceases.
12. He has a meadow 2 stades broad.

COMPARISON

15. Where two things are directly compared with one another by means of a Comparative Adjective, use the Genitive of Comparison in Greek where in Latin you use the Ablative.

e.g. *οἱ Ἑλλῆνες ἀνδρειότεροι εἰσὶ τῶν Περσῶν.*

The Greeks are braver than the Persians.

In all other forms of Comparison, as in Latin *quam* is used, so in Greek *ἢ* is used for *than*, and the case of the noun following it will be the same as the case of the noun which corresponds to it in the first part of the sentence.

e.g. *οἱ Πέρσαι ἔχουσι μεῖζον στράτευμα ἢ οἱ Ἑλλῆνες.*

The Persians have a bigger army than the Greeks.

μείζω δῶρα ἐμοὶ ἢ τῷ ἀδελφῷ ἔδωκεν.

He gave greater presents to me than to my brother.

Exercise 22 [A].

1. They gave more money to the sailors than to the soldiers.
2. The Athenians sent out more ships than the Spartans.
3. Commanding is much¹ easier than obeying.
4. Gold is often more useful than force.
5. The Athenians were far more powerful by sea than by land.
6. The islands sent more money than ships.
7. The men at Sparta were not braver than the women.
8. Ships used to be more beautiful than those of the present day.²
9. We win more prizes at the games than the Thebans.
10. We love liberty no less than life.

Exercise 23 [B].

1. The Athenians were more clever than the Spartans.
2. The Athenians had greater power than the Spartans.
3. The second ship sailed faster than the first.
4. You have a finer house than I.
5. He loved nothing more than glory.
6. Xenophon wrote more books than Thucydides.
7. It is easier to write well than to speak well.
8. They have made the wall broader than the ditch.
9. Aristides was a juster man than his enemies.
10. They have given a more beautiful prize to him than to me.

¹ πολλῷ. In Greek the Dative is used to express the measure of difference, corresponding to the Ablative in Latin.

² See Rule 2, page 1.

Exercise 24 [A].**REVISION.**

1. Speaking well was more easy for the Athenians than for the Spartans.
2. Having marched many stades in the course of the day, the army encamped towards evening.
3. Greeks did not consider lying disgraceful.
4. The traitors who had entered the city were pelted by the citizens with stones.
5. They set out at daybreak and continued to march the whole day.
6. At the approach of spring the ships which had sailed in the winter came to the island.
7. Men are not always braver than women.
8. Many of the soldiers were killed by the weapons of the enemy.
9. The enemy attacked the army which had set out from the camp at daybreak.
10. Cyrus was killed as he was attacking his brother.

Exercise 25 [B].

REVISION.

1. The Athenians always won many prizes at the games.
2. One thousand hoplites having set out from Plataea marched against the Persians.
3. We ransomed the soldiers who had been captured by the enemy.
4. I had my son taught to speak well.
5. The soldiers were willing to obey the general, and they did not desist from the battle.
6. Three hundred soldiers were killed in the night by the arrows of the barbarians.
7. The women wished to persuade the general to stop the battle, but he would not obey them.
8. Courage always was greatly honoured by the Greeks of old.
9. Money is not less useful to men of the present day than to those of old times.
10. Those who win prizes in the games are sometimes¹ honoured more than those who fight for their country.

¹ *évorē.*

Exercise 26 [A].**REVISION.**

1. The messengers who had been sent to Athens by the King of Persia were put to death by the citizens.
2. Many gifts were being brought in ships from those in the islands.
3. During the winter the ships remained in the harbour, and sailed out at the approach of spring.
4. The king wished to enslave the Greeks who had fought against the Persians.
5. The Plataeans being attacked by the Thebans sent messengers at once to Athens.
6. The soldiers, not having obeyed the general, were put to death.
7. We marched many stades, and reached the city towards evening.
8. We were not willing to ransom the citizens who had betrayed the city to the enemy.
9. Themistocles having fled from Greece to the King of Persia remained with (*παρά*) him for many years.
10. Jason sailed out wishing to win a great prize.

Exercise 27 [B].

REVISION.

1. The power of the rich is much greater at Thebes than at Athens
2. The city, not being able to save itself by arms, was saved by the skill of one citizen.
3. Thermopylae was betrayed by Ephialtes, persuaded by a great sum of money.
4. Those who were left fought again on the following day.
5. The Athenians, having freed the islands, were greatly honoured by all the Greeks.
6. In summer the city is less pleasant than in winter.
7. The Persians, having set out from Sardis, attacked Greece with a large army.
8. Men of old gave the greatest honour to those who won prizes in the games.
9. The leaders of the Greeks, having been seized by the Persians, were put to death.
10. Clever speaking is much more useful for orators than for soldiers.

Exercise 28 [A].**REVISION.**

1. The slaves were carrying food into the house.
2. Those who said this were condemned by the judges.
3. Having been captured by the Persians, he remained at Sardis for twenty years.
4. They were conquering, but the night stopped the battle.
5. After three days I shall come home bringing many prizes.
6. Men of those times used not to love money more than honour.
7. They were caught while crossing a broad river.
8. I have more friends now than I had then.
9. In spring I always wish to be in Athens.
10. The messengers who came from the king told us these things.

Exercise 29 [B].

REVISION.

1. Those who announce evil tidings are not loved.
2. The army of Demosthenes perished in the river.
3. Greece is distant a journey of many days from Persia.
4. Messengers sent to Cyrus kept asking for money.
5. Archimedes defended his city from the enemy.
6. By bravery we win renown.
7. Fighting is better than staying at home.
8. Poor men do not always obey the rich.
9. Having heard these things, the general led his army quickly towards Thebes.
10. The slaves, having been set free by the soldiers, at once left the island.

GENITIVE ABSOLUTE

16. Just as Latin uses an Ablative Absolute so Greek uses a Genitive Absolute; *i.e.* a participle may be used in agreement with a noun in the genitive case, the whole phrase being independent of the construction of the rest of the sentence.

e.g. οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἐπλευσαν ἥγεμονεύοντος τοῦ Νικίου.

The Athenians sailed under the leadership of Nicias.

ληφθέντων τῶν τειχῶν οἱ πολῖται ἐξέφευγον.

The walls having been taken the citizens tried to escape.

But if the participle can agree with the subject or object of the sentence, the Genitive absolute must not be used. *e.g.* we must write :

νικηθέντες οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἔφυγον.

The Athenians having been conquered fled.

And

οὐκ ἀπολογουμένους τοὺς Πλαταιέας οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἀπέκτειναν.

As the Plataeans did not defend themselves the Spartans put them to death.

Note that in Greek, participles may often be used to translate English adverbial clauses, *e.g.* 'When the messengers arrived' may be 'the messengers having arrived', 'As the army had no food' may be 'the army having no food'. See further page 122.

Exercise 30.

1. When the soldiers arrived they encamped in the market place.
2. When the army entered the city the citizens fled.
3. They took the messengers and put them to death.
4. The Spartans, under the command of the king, defeated the Athenians.
5. Having marched for many days, we reached a river ninety feet broad.
6. The traitor having been taken was put to death.
7. While we were marching homewards the enemy attacked us.
8. Though they were few, they attacked the enemy.
9. Though we are few, no one despises us.
10. When Cyrus was killed the soldiers fled.
11. We gave back the presents at his bidding.
12. Having ransomed the citizens we returned home.

Exercise 31 [A].

1. The cavalry having been routed, the army retreated.
2. The army having been routed fled.
3. Being allowed to escape, they did not remain.
4. When the messengers arrived the king had already died.
5. The city having been betrayed to the enemy, all the men were killed.
6. The army crossed the river when the general ordered them to advance.
7. Having reached the river, the army crossed at once.
8. We remained in the city though we were able to depart.
9. The king being weak, no one was willing to obey him.
10. Having captured the messengers, the Thebans put them to death.

Exercise 32 [B].

1. When the Athenians had arrived, the army fought more bravely.
2. Being commanded by the general, the soldiers retreated.
3. The ship having set sail was away for twenty-one days.
4. The ship having already sailed, Socrates was not put to death for nineteen days.
5. The citizens having been condemned, the Spartans put them to death.
6. Being compelled to retreat, the soldiers were ready to march.
7. The soldiers having no food did not wish to attack the enemy.
8. The general did not wish to attack the enemy as the army had no food.
9. Though able to escape, Socrates stayed in the city.
10. When they had entered, the judge asked the slaves many questions.¹

¹ *many questions* = πολλά (n. pl.).

P R O N O U N S

aὐτός.

17. (a) *aὐτός* used by itself in the oblique cases = *Lat.* *eum, eam, id, etc., him, her, it.*¹

(b) Used in the Nominative by itself, or used with nouns (or pronouns) in any case, *aὐτός* = *Lat.* *ipse, self.* In this sense it must not come between the Article and the Noun.

(c) *ó aὐτος* (*aὐτός*) = *Lat.* *idem, the same.*

e.g. (a) *ἀπέκτεινεν αὐτούς.*

He slew them.

ἀφειλόμην τὸ ξίφος αὐτοῦ.

I took away his sword.

(b) *αὐτός ἀπέκτεινα τὸν βασιλέα.*

I myself slew the king.

ἀπέκτεινα αὐτὸν τὸν βασιλέα or τὸν βασιλέα αὐτόν.

I slew the king himself.

(c) *πάντες τὸν αὐτὸν μισθὸν ἔλαβον.*

They all received the same reward.

¹ In this sense do not place the Pronoun first in the sentence.

Exercise 33 [A].

1. The king himself gave me the money.
2. They all obey the same master.
3. We ourselves gave the money to the poor.
4. The storm seemed dangerous to the sailors themselves.
5. I gave them the same reward.
6. I consider the citizens themselves traitors.
7. She herself was braver than they.
8. The soldiers themselves flew from the city.
9. The same men do not always say the same things.
10. I myself saw his wife in the house.

Exercise 34 [B].

1. Truth itself is not always pleasing.
2. I received the same reward from the king himself.
3. I sent their money to the king.
4. He himself said it.
5. The rich men gave them the same presents.
6. Who will ransom the general himself ?
7. In the same battle the general was killed.
8. They killed the citizens, women and all.¹
9. I myself sent them to Athens.
10. The son has greater power himself than the father.

¹ αὐτῶν ταῖς γυναιξὶ.

So ἡ ναῦς ἀπώλετο αὐτοῖς τοῖς ναύταις.
The ship perished, sailors and all.

PRONOUNS

18. Demonstrative Pronouns.

οὗτος, *this, that*. It sometimes corresponds to Lat. *iste*.

ὅδε is a more emphatic *this*, generally meaning *this near me, this here*, like the Lat. *hic*.

ἐκεῖνος = *that, that yonder*, corresponds generally to the Lat. *ille*.¹

These three pronouns when used with nouns require the article, but take the Predicative position, i.e. they *must not come between the article and the noun*.

e.g. <i>ταῦτα τὰ δῶρα</i>	<i>these gifts.</i>
or <i>τὰ δῶρα ταῦτα</i>	
<i>ἐκείνη ἡ νῆσος</i>	<i>that island (yonder).</i>
or <i>ἡ νῆσος ἐκείνη</i>	
<i>ἥδε ἡ ὁδός</i>	<i>this street here (where we are).</i>
or <i>ἡ ὁδὸς ἥδε</i>	

19. The Article as a Pronoun.—The Article was originally a Demonstrative Pronoun, and one or two uses of it as a Pronoun remained in Attic Greek. The most important was its use with *μέν* and *δέ* for 'one . . . the other,' 'some . . . others.'²

e.g. *οἱ μὲν ἔμενον οἱ δὲ ἀπῆλθον.*

Some remained, but others went away.

ὁ μὲν φιλεῖ τὴν δόξαν ὁ δὲ τὸ ἀργύριον.

One man loves glory, another money.

¹ Other differences between these Pronouns are explained on p. 133.

² Another use of the Article as a Pronoun is explained on p. 134.

20. Possessive Pronouns. These generally require the article.

1st Person. $\delta\ \epsilon\mu\circ s$, *my* $\delta\ \eta\mu\acute{e}t\epsilon\rho s$, *our*.

2nd Person. $\delta\ \sigma\circ s$, *thy* $\delta\ \bar{\nu}\mu\acute{e}t\epsilon\rho s$, *your*.

3rd Person.—Attic Greek has no Possessive Pronoun of the 3rd Person, but uses the Genitive of the Reflexive $\acute{e}au\tauou$ for *Lat.* suus, *his own*, and the Genitive $a\acute{u}tou$ from $a\acute{u}t\circ s$ for the *Lat.* eius, *his*.

It is possible in the same way to use the Genitives $\acute{e}mu\tauou$, $\eta\mu\acute{a}n$, etc., for the Possessives of the 1st and 2nd Persons.

Of these Genitives the Reflexives $\acute{e}mu\tauou$, $\acute{e}au\tauou$, etc. are placed between the Article and the Noun. The rest generally follow the Noun.

e.g. $\grave{a}\pi\acute{e}l\thetaou\ eis\ t\grave{h}\nu\ \acute{e}m\grave{h}\nu\ oik\grave{a}av$.

I went away to my own house.

$\grave{a}\pi\acute{e}l\thetaeu\ eis\ t\grave{h}\nu\ \acute{e}au\tauou\ oik\grave{a}av$.

He went away to his own house.

$\eta\lambda\thetaou\ eis\ t\grave{h}\nu\ oik\grave{a}av\ a\acute{u}tou$.

They came to his house.

$\grave{a}\pi\acute{e}l\thetaete\ \pi\rho\circ s\ t\grave{h}\nu\ oik\grave{a}av\ \bar{\nu}\mu\acute{a}n$ or $\pi\rho\circ s\ t\grave{h}\nu\ \bar{\nu}\mu\acute{e}t\acute{e}ra\ oik\grave{a}av$.

Go away to your house.

Exercise 35 [A].

1. The general himself was not willing to attack this army.
2. Truth is good, but men do not always love what is good.
3. These masters set their own slaves free.
4. Some had already arrived and others were setting out.
5. The king himself announced these things to all the citizens.
6. He gave them his own horse.
7. I was not willing to take his horse.
8. The Greeks were victorious three times in the same war.
9. The Thebans saved their own city, but they were not willing to fight for Greece.
10. We ourselves always wished to receive the same presents.
11. We all went away to our own houses.
12. I did not wish to give him my own sword.

Exercise 36 [B]

1. Some remained in the city and others went out against the enemy.
2. We ourselves willingly gave the poor our own money.
3. Those soldiers are worthy of the greatest honour.
4. He gave the general his sword, but he was not willing to give him his horse.
5. I reported these things to the king himself.
6. I consider these traitors worthy of the same punishment.
7. He gave them his ships and sailors.
8. Some love gold more than honour ; others consider this disgraceful.
9. I willingly gave a large sum of money to these poor men.
10. He did not wish to send his son, but he sent a slave.
11. We will give you our gold and you will send us food.
12. That money I myself received from my father.

CONNECTION

21. In writing Greek it is most important to notice the use of Participles and Particles in connecting sentences.

Participles, as in Latin, are mainly used to make several statements in one sentence, where in English we should use several verbs.

e.g. ἀναστὰς ἐξῆλθε.

He got up and went out.

συλλαβὼν τὸν δοῦλον ἀπέκτεινεν.

He arrested the slave and put him to death.

Particles are used to connect sentences and clauses with each other.

The commonest are <i>kai</i> , and <i>ἀλλά</i> , but <i>δέ</i> , but or and <i>οὖν</i> , therefore <i>γάρ</i> , for <i>μέντοι</i> , however	} first word. } second word.
--	-------------------------------------

¹ Notice that Relative Pronouns are rarely used in Greek, as they are in Latin, to connect sentences.

e.g. *Quae cum ita sint* would in Greek be
ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα οὗτως ἔχει or *τούτων δ' οὗτως ἔχόντων*.

. . . *μέν* . . . *δέ* are used to point to a contrast between two coördinate clauses or sentences.

e.g. *τὸ μὲν στράτευμα διεφθάρη, νῆες δὲ δώδεκα ἐξέφυγον.*

The army was destroyed, but twelve ships escaped.

(*N.B.*—*μέν* must not be used unless there is a *δέ* to follow.)

. . . *τε* . . . *καί*, *both . . . and* } connect words
οὐ μόνον . . . ἀλλὰ καί, *not only . . . but also*} or clauses.

e.g. *ἀπώλεσεν τούς τε ἵππους καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια.*

He lost both horses and beasts of burden.

Βούλεται τε καὶ ἐπίσταται.

He both wishes and knows.

Exercise 37 [A].

The Greek army left the harbour on the following day. When they had sailed for four days in the direction of Lemnos, a storm arose and destroyed five of the ships. Not many of the hoplites in these vessels were saved. On the eighth day, however, they reached Lemnos, and immediately sent messengers to all the cities. Some of the cities were persuaded, and sent five hundred of their hoplites into the Athenian camp. But the rest brought in all their property into the towns and defended their walls.

Exercise 38 [B].

The Athenians wished most of all to conquer the citizens of Mytilene, they being the bravest and the richest of all the Lesbians. But when they had attacked the walls of this town three times and had done nothing, they retreated to the place where they had made their first camp. This camp was on a spot where there was no water, and as winter was beginning, the army was already suffering terribly; for their own provisions, brought from Athens, had been in the ships which perished in the storm. It seemed best, therefore, to the generals to return home at once, and start again in the following spring.

Exercise 39 [A].

At the approach of spring the army of the Thebans left behind all the baggage and marched out of camp. Having crossed the mountains, they came down into the plain where the enemy were already awaiting them. The soldiers wished to attack at once, but the general thought it safer to wait, the enemy having a strong position. Therefore he sent out the cavalry, wishing to persuade the enemy to fight, but he himself remained with¹ the infantry in the camp. But the enemy, seeing the cavalry advancing, at once came out of their camp and attacked the Thebans with all their force.

¹ Say *having*.

Exercise 40 [B].

When the Persians reached Marathon, ten thousand Athenians were drawn up on the mountains, under the command of Miltiades.¹ When they were about to attack the Persians, an army of one thousand infantry arrived from Plataea, the other states sending no soldiers. These Plataeans came, being grateful to the Athenians, who had helped them of old. Therefore eleven thousand Greeks were ready to attack the great host of the Persians. It was possible for them to remain in the mountains, but Miltiades ordered them to fall upon the Persians at once, whilst they were disembarking from their ships, and not fearing an attack.

¹ Miltiades being general (Gen. Abs.).

INDIRECT STATEMENT

22. Verbs of *saying* and *thinking* are followed by two constructions :

I. Clauses introduced by $\delta\tau\iota$ or $\omega\varsigma$ (that). Negative $o\nu$.

(a) After Primary tenses the verb retains the mood and tense of Direct speech.

(b) After Historic tenses also the Verb generally retains the mood and tense of the Direct Speech.¹ But an Indicative of the Direct Speech may be changed to the same tense of the Optative.

Notice (1) that the tense of the Direct Speech is never changed ; (2) that *Sequence* in Greek is a sequence of *mood*, not of tense, the Optative practically corresponding to the Historic tenses of the Latin Subjunctive.

(The Imperfect and Pluperfect having no tenses in the Optative are generally kept in the Indicative.)

EXAMPLES.

Direct. ó Κῦρος πάρεστι, *Cyrus is present.*

Indirect (a) λέγουσιν ὅτι ó Κῦρος πάρεστι.

They say that Cyrus is present.

(b) ἀπέκρινατο ὅτι ó Κῦρος παρείη } *He answered*
 " " " πάρεστι } *that Cyrus*
 " " " } *was present.*

εἰπεν ὅτι { πάρεσται
 { παρέσοιτο } *He said that he would be present.*

¹ This is known as a *Graphic* or *Vivid* Construction, because it keeps as closely as possible to the exact words of the speaker.

E.g. In 'He said that the general was present,' where the exact words of the speaker were 'The general is present,' Greek prefers $\iota\pi\epsilon\nu$ ὅτι ó στρατηγὸς πάρεστι, though $\iota\pi\epsilon\nu$ is Historic, and we might say $\epsilon\pi\epsilon\nu$ ὅτι ó στρατηγὸς παρείη.

Exercise 41.

1. The messengers announced that the ships of the enemy were approaching.
2. He replied that the ships would speedily come into the harbour.
3. It is reported that the enemy have fled.
4. They reported that the army had fallen into a marsh.
5. It was reported that Cyrus was dead.
6. They said that the army would not encamp for the night.
7. Say that I will come to their assistance.
8. It was reported that the Athenians were fortifying their city.
9. Demosthenes said that Philip could not conquer the Athenians.
10. Answer that you will not be present yourself.

INDIRECT STATEMENT (*continued*).

23. II. Verbs of *saying* and *thinking* may also be followed by the **Accusative with the Infinitive**, as in Latin.

But in Greek if the subject of the Infinitive is the same as the subject of the principal Verb it is expressed only where emphasis or contrast is required, and, if expressed, it is in the **Nominative**.

The tense of the Infinitive is the same as the tense of the Indicative used by the speaker, the Present Infinitive including the Imperfect, and the Perfect including the Pluperfect.

The Negative with the Infinitive in Indirect Statement is *οὐ*.

- (1) Of the verbs of *saying*, *φημί* takes only the Infinitive construction, while *λέγω* and *εἰπον* prefer a clause with *ὅτι* or *ὡς*.
- (2) *οὐ φημί* is used like *nego* in Latin for the English 'I say that . . . not . . .'

EXAMPLES.

ἀπεκρίνατο τὸν Κῦρον οὐ παρεῖναι.

He answered that Cyrus was not present.

οὐκ ἔφη ἀπιέναι.

He said he would not go away.

ἐνόμιζεν (αὐτὸς) εἶναι κριτής.

He thought he (himself) was judge.

N.B.—The verbs *hope* (*ἐλπίζω*), *promise* (*ὑπισχνέομαι*), *swear* (*ὄμνυμι*), form a class by themselves. They do not

INDIRECT STATEMENT (*continued*).

take Construction I. at all; on account of their sense they generally require the *Future Infinitive*; and the negative after them is $\mu\bar{\eta}$.

ὑπέσχοντο μὴ τοῦτο ποιήσειν.

They promised not to do this.

Exercise 42.

Turn all the sentences of Exercise 41 by the Infinitive construction.

INDIRECT STATEMENT (*continued*).

24. Verbs of *knowing* and *perceiving* take a Participle instead of an Infinitive.

The Participle may belong either to the subject or the object of these verbs and agree with it in case. The negative is *οὐ*.

Thus 'I know that he has arrived' takes in Greek the form 'I know him having arrived,' where the Participle agrees with the object. 'I am conscious that I have made a mistake' takes the form 'I am conscious having made a mistake,' where the Participle agrees with the subject (or with the Indirect Object).

Thus--

οἶδα αὐτὸν ἀφικόμενον.

σύνοιδα ἐμαυτῷ ἀμαρτών (or ἀμαρτόντι).

Also--

γῆσθετο τῶν πολιτῶν οὐκέτι ἀμυνουμένων.

He perceived that the citizens would resist no longer.

Such verbs are *οἶδα*, *γιγνώσκω*, *αἰσθάνομαι*, *μέμνημαι*, *ἐπιλανθάνομαι*, *ἀκούω*. Many others *may* take this construction instead of the Infinitive, e.g. *ἀγγέλλω*, *πυνθάνομαι*.

Exercise 43 [A].

1. The messenger said that he had not seen the camp of the Persians.
2. I perceived that I had come to the house of my friend.
3. He knew that no one had gone out of the house.
4. He knows that not he himself but his friend is being sought for.
5. The scouts announced that the enemy had fled.
6. He says that the army will not arrive immediately.
7. We saw that the enemy would attack us immediately.
8. I promised not to go into the town.
9. I confessed that I myself did this deed.
10. Aeneas perceived that Troy was burning.
11. I think he spoke the truth.
12. We think it right to honour those who fell at Thermopylae.

Exercise 44 [B].

1. I saw that the city was already burning.
2. They knew that the general himself would be present.
3. The Athenians all declared Aristides to be the justest of men.
4. Miltiades promised to bring money to Athens.
5. They admitted that they had fled from the battle.
6. Who has not heard that Greece was once free ?
7. They hoped that no one had seen them.
8. He said that not he himself but his wife had betrayed the city.
9. The prisoners said that they had not done wrong.
10. We thought that we should find you here.
11. They perceived that the gates had been opened.
12. Wise men think that the soul is immortal.

Exercise 45 [A].

After this, messengers arrived at Athens saying that the whole army had been destroyed, and that the generals themselves had perished. At first no one believed that this was true. Some said that the messengers were traitors and wished to deceive the people; others declared that they knew the enemy had been defeated. But at last they perceived that the news was true. They did not however despair, but began to¹ fortify the walls of the city, for they believed that the Spartans, having heard the tidings², would speedily attack them.

Exercise 46 [B].

News came to Athens³ that the Persians had already crossed the mountains, and were advancing into Attica. Many of the chief men speaking in the senate said that they would be unable to defend the city, and that they thought it better to take refuge in the Acropolis; but on the advice of Themistocles⁴ the majority determined to embark on the fleet⁵, for they hoped that there they would be safe, thinking that the ships were the wooden walls spoken of⁶ by the god.

¹ *Began to fortify*—Imperfect of *fortify*.

² The things which had been announced.

³ It was reported to (*εἰς*) Athens.

⁴ Themistocles advising (Gen. Abs.).

⁵ Ships. ⁶ εἰρημένα.

Exercise 47 [A].**REVISION.**

1. These things having happened, I think it is better to have no general than this one.
2. I told them plainly that I would not assist them.
3. My house is in this street.
4. They saved the citizens, but destroyed their city.
5. Having captured Athens, the Persians thought they had finished the whole war.
6. When their army has been conquered the Athenians punish the generals.
7. You and I have the same books.
8. He himself does not think that he acted wisely.
9. The ship not having sailed, we can stop it.
10. I think these men themselves are worthy of honour.

Exercise 48 [B].

REVISION.

1. Conon being general the soldiers thought that they could always conquer the enemy.
2. We promised to set free our own slaves.
3. The general himself said that we could not conquer.
4. He promised to give me his sword.
5. The leaders having been killed, Xenophon was made general.
6. I saw that these ships came from the same harbour.
7. We perceived that we should be captured ourselves.
8. Themistocles himself was willing to help the Persians.
9. Those scouts report that the enemy are crossing the mountains.
10. They said that barbarians would never invade their country.

DIRECT QUESTIONS

25. Single Questions in Greek may be asked in three ways --

1. With Interrogative Pronouns or Adverbs *tis*, *ποῦ*, *πῶς*, etc.
2. With the Interrogative particle *ἀρα*.
3. Without any interrogative word at all.

In 2 and 3, if the negative *οὐ* be used, the question expects the answer 'yes,' like questions asked with *nonne* in Latin.¹ If the negative *μή* be used, the answer 'no' is generally expected, as when *num* is used in Latin.

e.g. *πόθεν ἦλθε;*

Whence did he come?

ἀρα φιλόσοφος ἐστιν ἔκεινος;

Is that man a philosopher?

ἀρ' οὐ φιλόσοφος ἐστι;

Is he not a philosopher?

ἀρα μή φιλόσοφος ἐστι;

He is not a philosopher, is he?

26. Double Questions are asked with the conjunctions *ποτερον . . . οὐ . . . ;* but *πότερον* may be omitted.

e.g. *πότερον πλούσιος ή πένης ἐστί;*

Is he rich or poor?

¹ Another way of expressing this form of question is by the use of *πῶς οὐ*. E.g. *πῶς οὐ φιλόσοφος ἐστι;* *Is he not a philosopher?* *Surely he is a philosopher* (literally, 'How is he not,' etc.).

27. Deliberative Questions (*i.e.* questions in the 1st person where the speaker asks *what he is to do*) are always put in the subjunctive. They may be preceded by θέλεις, βούλει, etc. The negative is μὴ.

e.g. [Βούλεσθε] εἴπω τοῦτο ; Shall I say this? Do you wish that I should say this?

τί εἴπω ; What am I to say?

μὴ ἀποκρίνωμαι ; Am I not to answer?

The following is a list of the commonest Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs with the corresponding Relatives and Demonstratives :—

INTERROGATIVE.	RELATIVE.	DEMONSTRATIVE.
Direct. Indirect.		
τίς ; ὅπτις ; who ? quis ?	ὅς, who, qui.	οὗτος, ὃδε, etc., that, this, hic, etc.
πόσος ; ὅπόσος ; how great ? quantus ?	ὅσος [as great] as, quantus.	τοσοῦτος, so great, tantus.
πόσοι ; ὅπόσοι ; how many ? quot ?	ὅσοι [as many] as, quot.	τοσοῦτοι, so many, tot.
ποῖος ; ὅποῖος ; of what kind ? qualis ?	οἷος [such] as, qualis.	τοιοῦτος, such, talis.
ποῦ ; ὅπου ; where ? ubi ?	οὗ, ὅπου, where, ubi, qua.	ἐκεῖ, there (ibi), ἐνθάδε, αὐτοῦ, here (hic).
ποῖ ; ὅποι ; whither ? quo ?	οἵ, ὅποι, whither, quo.	ἐκεῖσε, thither, eo.
πόθεν ; ὅπόθεν ; whence ? unde ?	ὅθεν, whence, unde.	ἐκεῖθεν, ἐνθένδε, thence hence, illinc, hinc.
πότε ; ὅπότε ; when ? quando ?	ὅτε, when, quo tempore.	τότε, then, tunc.
πῶς ; ὅπως ; how ; quo- modo ?	ώς, as, ut.	οὕτως, ὡδε, thus, sic.

Either Direct or Indirect Interrogatives may be used for asking Indirect Questions.

Exercise 49.

Who said that ?	How did you do this ?
How many were present ?	Did you see him ?
What sort of books ?	Did they not arrive ?
How great is the wall ?	Are we to go away ?
Where is the money ?	Did they send money or
Where did they come from ?	ships ?
Shall I not do this ?	He is not dead, is he ?
Where shall you go ?	Where is the harbour ?
Whom do you obey ?	Do you wish us to remain ?
Whither am I to go ?	Whose books have you ?
When did you arrive	Surely he knows this ?

Exercise 50 [A].

1. Do these citizens obey the king willingly ?
2. How many cities in Greece have tyrants ?
3. When was it announced that he was dead ?
4. Is this the country which you wish to set free ?
5. What sort of reward did you promise them ?
6. Are not these the fields which you tried to sell ?
7. Whither is the army to march ?
8. Did they encamp where there was a river ?
9. Do you wish to go away or to remain here ?
10. How many oxen did you send to the army ?
11. How large was the ship in which you came ?
12. What am I to ask him ?

Exercise 51 [B].

1. How many ships were sent by the Athenians ?
2. This is the ship in which they came.
3. Who brought the gold from the continent ?
4. Did the orator try to save the city ?
5. Were there not many oxen in these meadows ?
6. We tried to save the citizens whose houses were burning.
7. Surely you did not send your children there ?
8. What kind of presents did you give to these boys ?
9. Where was that man going to whom you were speaking ?
10. Were you trying to save others or to escape yourself ?
11. Do you think soldiers or sailors more useful to a city ?
12. Do you wish us not to ask ?

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

28. The construction of an Indirect Question in Greek is the same as that of an Indirect Statement introduced by *ώς* or *ὅτι* [see page 48], and has the same preference for the *graphic* form.

It is introduced by Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs (of the Direct or Indirect form) or by Conjunctions.¹

The regular negative is *οὐ*, but after *εἰ*, and in the second part of alternative questions, *μή* can be used as well as *οὐ*.

EXAMPLES.

*βούλεται γνῶναι ὅπόσοι } πάρεισι.
πόσοι } πάρεστιν }*

He wishes to ascertain how many are present.

*ηρώτησεν εἰ ὁ στρατηγὸς παρείη }
πάρεστιν }*

He asked if the general were present.

*εἰπέ μοι πότερον τὴν οἰκίαν θέλεις ἔχειν ή οὐ }
μή }*

Tell me whether you wish to have the house or not.

29. Deliberative Questions becoming Indirect may always remain in the Subjunctive, but after a Historic tense they may become Optative.

Remember that the Subjunctive can only be used in *deliberative* questions, never in other Indirect Questions.

EXAMPLE.

*ἡπόρει ὅτι ποιήσῃ } He was at a loss what to do.
ποιήσειε }*

(Direct, *τί ποιήσω*; Aor. Subj.).

¹ *εἰ* is used to translate *if* or *whether*. *εἴν* must never be used.

Exercise 52 [A].

1. I was asking if you were here.
2. He taught me how a book is made.
3. Tell me by what way you came.
4. I am wondering whether we shall find the gates opened.
5. When he died I cannot say.
6. They asked to whom they were to surrender the city.
7. They did not know who would come to their assistance.
8. I asked why this had not been done.
9. I asked where they were fighting.
10. They told me how broad the river was.
11. I asked if no one had come.

Exercise 53 [B].

1. These boys will tell us where the road leads.
2. We tried to find out where the enemy had encamped.
3. Do you know who said that?
4. Tell me if the enemy will attack us or not.
5. It was difficult to discover how great were the numbers of the enemy.
6. We learnt how Spartan boys were trained.
7. We did not know whether these men were friends or enemies.
8. Tell me what I am to answer.
9. We wondered how they could be saved.
10. We are trying to discover if there is not a river here.
11. It is not easy to know if it is better to fight or fly.

Exercise 54 [A].

1. Tell me how you learnt this ?
2. The scouts informed the general how large the Persians' camp was.
3. These men told us who were in the house.
4. No one seemed to know where we were.
5. We were asking what he had done.
6. They asked us if we were willing to come to their help.
7. I do not clearly know whether the army had set out or was remaining in the camp.
8. I wonder why they are no longer friendly to us.
9. We learnt why the Spartans were so strong.
10. I do not know whither I am to flee.

Exercise 55 [B].

1. I enquired of him why he had fled to the Persians.
2. I cannot tell whither he has gone.
3. They told me how big the city was and how many citizens there were in it.
4. I asked how many archers he had.
5. Ask him whether he hopes to obtain the reward or not.
6. I wondered how they crossed so great a river.
7. I asked the breadth of the river.
8. I wondered how we were to save the fleet.
9. I did not know the greatness of the danger.
10. I am trying to find out who that man is.
11. I tried to find out what kind of a man he was.

Exercise 56 [A].

The messengers having returned, the general asked them what kind of a country they had seen. They replied that it was a good land where fruit is gathered from the trees twice in the year, and that there were many rivers in it. When asked if the people had received them kindly, they answered that they had passed through the country and had suffered no harm; but that the people spoke a strange language, and they were not able to understand what they were saying. When the general asked how large the army of this people was, the messengers said they had not seen a soldier in all their journey.

Exercise 57 [B].

The ambassadors then informed the king why they had come. They declared that many cities wished to be independent, and they asked him if he were willing to permit this. Therefore the king demanded how many states had already revolted. On learning that few were any longer¹ willing to obey his rule, he became enraged, and asked why no one had informed him of these things before. ‘They shall soon learn,’ he said, ‘how great my power is, for I will destroy all their cities and bring the inhabitants here as slaves.’

¹ οὐτοις.

Exercise 58 [A].

When the ship came near the land, a great many of the inhabitants assembled on the shore and asked the heroes where they came from and what they wanted. They replied that they were going to Colchis in search of the golden fleece¹. On hearing this, the inhabitants received them kindly, and their king came down to the shore and sent for many oxen and great skins of wine. The next day the heroes sailed away, but a great storm came on and they could not see where they were going. At last, while it was still night, they disembarked on an island, but the inhabitants attacked them, thinking that they were pirates, and many were killed. When the day dawned, the heroes discovered that they had killed the very king who had received them so kindly the day before.

Exercise 59 [B].

Medea now knew that her father would never permit her to come home again; for she had not only deceived him but had shown the stranger how he could steal the golden fleece¹. She therefore fled with Jason to the Greek ship, taking with her her young brother only. But when the ship had not yet sailed a journey of one day, they perceived another vessel, faster than their own, pursuing them. As this ship drew near, Jason was at a loss what to do, but Medea killed her brother with her own hand, and cast his limbs into the sea, hoping thus to stop the pursuers.

¹ πόκος *m.*

30. GENITIVE CASE AFTER VERBS

1. A genitive of 'the object aimed at or desired' follows such verbs as—

τυγχάνω, hit; *ἀμαρτάνω*, miss; *ἄπτομαι*, touch; *ἄρχω*, begin; *ἐπιθυμέω*, desire; *δέομαι*, need.

2. A genitive of 'separation' follows such verbs as—

ἀπέχω, to be distant from; *παύω*, make to cease from; *ἀπαλλάσσω*, separate.

3. A genitive of the 'ground of accusation' follows verbs of accusing, etc., as *αἰτιάμαι*, accuse. But compounds of *κατά*, such as *καταγιγνώσκω*, to condemn, take a Genitive of the person, an Accusative of the ground of accusation or the penalty.

e.g. *κατηγορεῖν τινος τὴν δειλίαν.*
αἰτιᾶσθαι τινα τῆς δειλίας.

To accuse some one of cowardice.

καταγιγνώσκειν τινὸς θάνατον.

To condemn a man to death.

4. A genitive follows verbs implying 'perception' as—

αἰσθάνομαι, perceive; *μέμνημαι*, remember; *ἐπιλανθάνομαι*, forget. *ἀκούω*, to hear, takes a Genitive of the person (the source of sound), an Accusative of the thing heard.

e.g. *ἤκουσα σοῦ ᾠδοντος.*

I heard you singing.

ἤκουσα τὴν τοῦ ρήτορος φωνήν.

I heard the orator's voice.

Exercise 60.

1. They were in want of food.
2. They condemned him for cowardice.
3. They accused him of cowardice.
4. They said they would not listen to him singing.
5. They said they had heard a noise.
6. Remember the things done by your ancestors.
7. They enquired how many stades Marathon was from Athens.
8. They made the Thebans cease from the battle.
9. They separated the cavalry from the hoplites.
10. They forgot the words of their father.
11. The judges passed sentence of death on the traitor.
12. Will they not accuse us of folly ?

GENITIVE CASE AFTER VERBS (*continued*).

5. A genitive of 'Price' follows such verbs as—

ἀνέομαι, buy; πωλέω, sell.

e.g. ἐπρίατο τοῦτον τὸν οἶκον τριῶν ταλάντων.

He bought this house for three talents.

6. A Partitive Genitive follows—

μετέχω, share in; μεταδίδωμι, give a share of.

e.g. μετέδωκέ μοι τοῦ μισθοῦ.

He gave me a share of the reward.

7. A genitive, which is really Comparative, follows verbs expressing 'superiority to' or 'power over'—

κρατέω, conquer, be master of; ἄρχω, rule;

περιγίγνομαι, be superior to, overcome.

8. A genitive of Cause follows such verbs as—*οἰκτίρω, pity; ζηλόω, envy; θαυμάζω, admire; also χάριν ἔχω or χάριν οἴδα, feel gratitude, thank (dat. of person).*

e.g. ζηλῶ αὐτὸν τῆς εὐτυχίας.

I envy him his good fortune.

χάριν ἔχω τῷ βασιλεῖ τῆς εὐεργεσίας.

I am grateful to the king for his kindness.

Exercise 61.

1. They forgot the message.
2. Have you sold the house ?
3. He promised not to touch the money.
4. I hope to begin the work myself on the fourth day.
5. I am thankful to you for your assistance.
6. They said they would not themselves share in the work.
7. They asked whether I remembered them.
8. Did you not perceive that they wished to condemn him ?
9. Nieias was accused by Cleon of cowardice.
10. Give me a share of the money.
11. We envy you your leisure.
12. They desisted from the battle.
13. They bought a house at Athens for 1200 drachmae.
14. Did we not share your danger ?
15. I admired him for his bravery.
16. I pitied you for your folly.

DATIVE CASE

31. The following are important uses of the Dative after Verbs :—

(1) **Dative of Possessor** with *εἰμί* or *γίγνομαι*.

e.g. *πολλαὶ νῆσι εἰσὶ τοῖς Ἀθηναῖοις.*

The Athenians have many ships.

(2) **Dative after certain Verbs used impersonally.**

e.g. *δοκεῖ*, it seems (*good*) ; *συμφέρει*, it is expedient ;
πρέπει, it becomes ; *προσήκει*, it befits ; *ἔξεστι*, it is possible.

(3) **Dative denoting 'Association with' or 'Advantage to'** after such verbs as—

ἴπομαι, I follow ; *χράομαι*, I use ; *ἐντυγχάνω*, I meet ; *βοηθέω*, I help ; *μάχομαι*, I fight ; *ἐπιτίθεμαι*, I attack ; *πείθομαι*, I obey ; *ηδομαι*, I have pleasure in.

Also notice

(4) **Dative of Respect.**

πόλις Θάψακος ὄνόματι.

A city, Thapsacus by name (called Thapsacus).

For Dative expressing Instrument or Cause see page 18.

“ “ Time and Place see pages 20 and 23.

Exercise 62 [A].

1. We will now go to the help of the allies.
2. It is expedient for you to obey the king.
3. I know that the Athenians have many ships.
4. It is possible for us to attack the enemy, but it is wiser to wait.
5. It seemed good to the generals to send forward the cavalry.
6. We saw that the Persians had many cavalry but few infantry.
7. Are you willing to obey those who took our city by force?
8. They were fighting bravely against the enemy.
9. Apollo had a temple in an island called Delos.
10. We will attack the enemy who are following us.

Exercise 63 [B].

1. Socrates had no money but much wisdom.
2. Tell me how many are following us.
3. The Athenians promised to help the Plataeans, but they forgot their promise¹.
4. To most of them it seemed best to fight at once.
5. It is expedient for us to use the help of the Spartans.
6. By birth he is a Spartan.
7. I shall not try to kill him with the sword.
8. Are we allowed to share in your good fortune?
9. They did not obey the general though he gave the order many times.
10. They fought the same enemy bravely before, and I think they will fight him again.

¹ the things promised, τὰ ὑπεσχημένα.

ACCUSATIVE CASE

32. (1) Some Verbs, such as *ask* (*αἰτέω*), *teach* (*διδάσκω*), and *conceal* (*κρύπτω*), take two **Accusatives**, one of the Person, the other of the Thing.

e.g. *τὸν πατέρα σῖτον ἥτησεν.*

He asked his father for food.

A similar construction is found with *κακὰ λέγειν*, *ἀγαθὰ ποιεῖν*, etc.

e.g. *κακὰ* (or *κακῶς*) *λέγει τοὺς ἔχθρούς.*

He speaks ill of his enemies.

ἀγαθὰ (or *εὖ*) *ποιῶ τοὺς φίλους.*

I do good to (confer benefits on) my friends.

(2) (a) The **Accusative of Respect** limits the meaning of a Verb or Adjective.

e.g. *ἀλγῶ τὴν κεφαλήν.*

I have a pain in the head.

παρθένος καλὴ τὸ εἶδος.

A maiden beautiful in form.

ὁ ποταμὸς εἴκοσι πόδας εἶχε τὸ εὐρος.

The river was twenty feet broad.

(b) Under this head come the so-called **Adverbial Accusatives**.

e.g. *οὐδὲν, in no respect*; *πολύ, by far*; *τί; why?* *τὸ πᾶν, altogether*; *τἄλλα, in other respects.*

For the Accusative denoting **Time** and **Space**, see page 23.

Exercise 64 [A].

1. I knew that they had much money.
2. He was an Athenian by birth, but lived at Plataea.
3. Whom did you meet there ?
4. Have not the Persians more ships than the Athenians ?
5. I concealed the gold from them.
6. For many days they could not use the water.
7. I believe that this river is fifty feet broad.
8. He is in no respect better than his father.
9. He was taught music by a certain Athenian.
10. We were following the guide who had been sent to us.
11. They were willing to do good to their friends, but they tried to injure their enemies.
12. Why did you not ask the rulers for money ?

Exercise 65 [B].

1. Those who are fighting us are brave.
2. Bring help quickly to the allies.
3. Do not speak evil of rulers.
4. A Spartan called Lysander took Athens.
5. We admire those who speak well of us.
6. In other respects they injured us.
7. He was pleased with the presents which I gave him.
8. Did you use the money which you received ?
9. We met him near the city.
10. Having marched many stades, their feet were very painful.
11. We used often to ask the king for pay.
12. They were not willing to do good to us in any way.

Exercise 66.

1. Will you not send help to the Greeks ?
2. I think it is expedient for us to obey the laws.
3. Mycenae has no harbour.
4. I ask you whether it is possible for us to overcome the Persians.
5. Having formerly conferred many benefits on the king, I shall not now attack him.
6. Have you forgotten his name ?
7. Why do you think it will be easy to conquer this country ?
8. He was slain by a man named Harpax, a Thracian by race.
9. He said he had no money.
10. We perceived that three men were following us to the city.
11. They had no house, but were using mine.
12. I wished to know whether the Athenians or the Thebans were in possession of Plataea.
13. It is fitting for a slave to use few words.
14. On the following day he told me that he had already forgotten my words.
15. He says he will not sell it for 150 drachmae.
16. I know that I am in no way superior to him.

COMMANDS, EXHORTATIONS, WISHES

33. *Commands are always expressed in the Imperative.*

e.g. *μάχεσθε ἀνδρείως, fight bravely.*

ἔλθέτω δεῦρο, let him come here.

Prohibitions (2nd Person) may be expressed either in the Present Imperative or the Aorist Subjunctive.¹

μὴ ποίει τοῦτο = Do not do this habitually.

or Do not go on doing this (stop doing this).

μὴ ποιήσῃς τοῦτο = Do not do this.

Negative always *μή.*

34. *Exhortations (which are equivalent to commands in the 1st person) are expressed by the Subjunctive. Negative μή.*

e.g. *μαχώμεθα ἀνδρείως, let us fight bravely.*

μὴ ἀφῶμεν αὐτόν, let us not release him.

35. *Wishes for the Future are always to be expressed by the Optative with or without the particles εἴθε or εἰ γάρ.*
Negative *μή.*

e.g. *ஓλοιο, mayest thou perish!*

μὴ γένοιτο, may it not be so! or Heaven forbid!

εἴθε τοῦ πατρὸς εὐτυχέστερος εἴη.

May he be happier than his father.

¹ The 2nd Person Aorist Imperative must not be used in prohibitions.

Exercise 67 [A].

1. Children,¹ obey your parents.
2. Let the slave carry these presents to the king.
3. May the army always be victorious in the war !
4. Let them not think that we are afraid.
5. My son, may you be more fortunate than your father !
6. Let us find out what the others are doing.
7. May they not discover that we deceived them !
8. Do not conceal this money, but give it to the poor.
9. Citizens, do not obey a tyrant.
10. Let us bravely attack the enemy.

Exercise 68 [B].

1. Let us ransom those who were captured by the robbers.
2. May he never² know that his father was a slave !
3. Let him not try to deceive the general.
4. Basest of men, may you perish miserably !
5. Do not think that courage is easy for all.
6. May he always speak the truth !
7. Let him give back the money which he stole.
8. Soldiers, fight bravely and do not fear these enemies.
9. May you win many beautiful³ prizes at the games !
10. Do not try to persuade men so foolish.

¹ The Interjection **ὦ** is generally used with Vocatives in Greek.

² μηδέποτε.

³ In Greek *many and beautiful*. So always when a noun is qualified by two adjectives.

NEGATIVES

36. οὐκ and all its compounds are used to negative statements and questions (except deliberative questions). In commands and wishes μή and its compounds must be used.

In statements, etc.	In commands, etc.
οὐδείς	μηδείς, <i>no one.</i>
οὐ . . . ποτέ } οὐδέποτε }	μὴ . . . ποτέ, } μηδέποτε, <i>never.</i>
οὐκέτι	μηκέτι, <i>no longer.</i>
οὔπω	μήπω, <i>not yet.</i>
οὐδέ	μηδέ, <i>and not, not even.</i>
οὔτε . . . οὔτε	μήτε . . . μήτε, <i>neither, nor.</i>

Compound negatives which follow another negative confirm it, not cancel it as in English.

e.g. μὴ δεῦρο ἔλθῃς μηδέποτε.
Never come here again.

But if the simple negative follows the compound the two together make an affirmative.

e.g. οὐδεὶς οὐχ ὄρα.
Every one sees.

Exercise 69 [A].

1. Never yet have I seen a more powerful army.
2. My son, may you never become a traitor !
3. No one will come here again while we remain.
4. Let them no longer hope to persuade any one.
5. Obey your parents and do not think you are wiser than they.
6. I have not seen either fruit or flowers in this island.
7. Do not be afraid or think that this storm will destroy the ships.
8. O that we may never be more cowardly than the heroes of old !
9. Let none of the Greeks ever believe that there are no gods.
10. Have you not yet heard why the judge condemned them ?
11. My friends, be brave and never despair.

Exercise 70 [B].

1. Let no one ever try to persuade me.
2. My friends, no longer try to become rich.
3. Let us not desire either riches or honour.
4. The sailors had not yet landed from the ships.
5. May you never wish to leave your friends !
6. Let these traitors no longer be honoured by the rulers.
7. O that I might see my native land again !
8. No one ever yet found any fruit in this island.
9. Do not hope to persuade one of these barbarians.
10. Citizens, defend the walls and do not yield the city to the enemy.
11. Let no one make any answer to this judge.

INDIRECT COMMANDS

37. Indirect commands and petitions are expressed by the Infinitive as in English. Negative μή.

e.g. ἐκέλευσεν αὐτοὺς εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν εἰσιέναι.

He bade them enter the house.

παρεκελεύσατο τοῖς στρατιώταις μὴ ἀναχωρεῖν.

He exhorted the soldiers not to retire.

Exercise 71 [A].

1. Nicias always advised a general setting out for war not to despise the enemy.
2. The general first¹ exhorted his men to remember the glorious deeds of their ancestors², then¹ bade them charge the enemy.
3. Nothing will induce me to set him free.
4. Philip by this message persuaded the Athenians to make peace.
5. Let us warn Philip not to enter the territory of Olynthus.
6. Themistocles tried to persuade the Greeks not to destroy the bridge.
7. I forbid your using this money.

¹ First . . . then, πρῶτον μὲν . . . ἔπειτα δέ . . .

² The things nobly done by their fathers.

8. The ambassadors of the Samians begged the Athenians to spare their country.
9. I beseech you not to condemn the innocent.
10. I advised you, being so few, not to resist the enemy.

Exercise 72 [B].

1. The general ordered his men to wait no longer, but to charge the enemy boldly.
2. No one could persuade these youths not to journey to foreign lands.
3. I shall advise all my friends to return home.
4. With difficulty the general persuaded the troops not to break the treaty.
5. The other states tried to induce the Thebans not to make peace with the Persians.
6. The authorities at home commanded the general to stop the war.
7. Order the men to return to the ships and not to remain any longer in the town.
8. I could not induce them not to use these books.
9. We vainly tried to persuade the rulers to spare the captives.
10. We do not know why they forbade us to return home.

S U B O R D I N A T E C L A U S E S
I N I N D I R E C T S P E E C H

38. Clauses dependent on indirect statements, commands, or questions, follow these rules :—

(a) If the principal verb is Primary, the mood of the verb in the dependent clause is unchanged.

(b) If the principal verb is Historic, the verb in the dependent clause may be put into the Optative, but frequently the mood of direct speech is retained. The Historic tenses of the Indicative should not be changed to the Optative.

e.g. Direct. *χρῶμαι ταῖς βίβλοις αἷς ἔχω.*

I use the books which I have.

Indirect. (a) *φησὶν χρῆσθαι ταῖς βίβλοις αἷς ἔχει.*

He says he uses the books which he has.

(b) *ἔφη χρῆσθαι ταῖς βίβλοις αἷς ἔχοι.*

“ “ “ “ “ ἔχει.

He said he used the books which he had.

Exercise 73 [A].

1. He said he would not obey a general who treated the soldiers badly.
2. He ordered them to bring the prisoners whom they had arrested.
3. He said he would lead us to a city where we could get provisions.
4. The young man said he did not like sophists who made a display of wisdom.
5. He asked if we had received the money which he had sent.
6. I will tell him to read the letter which you wrote.
7. The judge threatened to condemn the prisoners whom he was trying.
8. The generals promised to pardon the soldiers whom they had taken.
9. Surely you knew that we should remain where we were ?
10. He has been ordered to report what happened.

Exercise 74 [B].

1. I am surprised that¹ he does not read half the books which he has.
2. They were ordered to bring into the camp the provisions which they had found.
3. They said they would not pardon the men who betrayed the city.
4. I have persuaded them to pardon the prisoners whom I considered innocent.
5. Do you think they will condemn to death the young man whom they arrested ?
6. I asked them where they had hidden the money which they had found.
7. He declared that he would not remain in the city where his enemies could find him.
8. I know that it is Aristides whom you consider the most upright of the Athenians.
9. We knew that we should reach an island where there were many rivers and mountains.
10. I do not suppose that they will pardon the citizens whom they believe to have betrayed the city.

¹ θαυμάζω εἰ μή.

Exercise 75 [A].**REVISION.**

Erginus, king of the Minyae, made war upon the Thebans and killed a great number of them. He also ordered them to give him every year one hundred cows, and sent messengers to receive¹ them. But Hercules, seeing these messengers, asked them who they were and where they were going. When he heard that they were sent by the Minyae, he told them to return to the city from which they had been sent and not to come again. When they refused, he bound their hands and cut off their ears and noses, bidding them take these as tribute to the king. Then the messengers returned and entreated the king to avenge them ; and Erginus swore that he would destroy the Thebans and raze their city to the ground.

¹ **Fut. Part.**

Exercise 76 [B].**REVISION.**

Alcmaeon, being commanded by the god to leave his native land, set out, not knowing whither he was going. At Delphi, however, the Pythia told him not to despair because he was sent to another country, but to go to Achelous and ask the river-god to help him. When Alcmaeon came to the river, Achelous asked what he wanted. Alcmaeon replied that he was not allowed by the gods, who wished to punish him, to remain in his own land, and that the foreign lands to which he went were not willing to receive him. Then Achelous commanded the river to bring down sand and earth from the mountains, and in this way made a new land in which he allowed Alcmaeon to live.

Exercise 77 [A].

REVISION.

In the middle of the feast Phineus came into the hall at the head of a large band of his slaves, and said that he would kill Perseus and all who helped him. For he said that Perseus had stolen Andromeda, whom the king had promised to give to himself. Then they fought in the hall, and Perseus slew many of his adversaries; but the fight was not equal, for there were twenty against one.¹ At last, Perseus, drawing forth the Gorgon's head, displayed it to Phineus and his followers, and instantly they were all turned into stone.

Exercise 78 [B].

REVISION.

After this the Trojans came at sunset to the land of the Cyclopes. Here they met a Greek who had been left behind by Ulysses. Aeneas bade him tell who he was and what had befallen him. The man replied that he was one of the sailors who were returning home from Troy after the war, and that when his comrades escaped he alone had been left in the cave of the Cyclops. He begged Aeneas not to leave him in the island, where he ran the risk of being killed or dying of hunger. While he was speaking, the Trojans saw the shepherd Polyphemus coming down to the shore, and taking the suppliant, they speedily embarked on their ship and sailed away.

¹ But they did not fight on equal terms—twenty against one.

CAUSAL CLAUSES

39. The Cause of an action is frequently to be expressed in Greek by the Participle [see page 34]; but it may be expressed by Causal Sentences introduced by *ὅτι*, *διότι*, *ὡς*, *because*; *ἐπεί*, *ἐπειδή*, *since*.¹

The Verb in these clauses is regularly in the Indicative; but if the speaker implies that the cause is one assigned by others, the clause is virtually in Indirect Speech and may have its Verb in the Optative if it is after a Historic tense.

Compare in Latin *quod* with the Subjunctive.

E.g. οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι τὸν Περικλέα ἐκάκιζον ὅτι οὐκ ἐπεξῆγεν.

The Athenians abused Pericles because he did not lead them out.

In this sentence the writer gives the cause as his own statement. But if he wished to give it merely as the cause assigned by the Athenians he would have written *ἐπεξάγοι* or *ἐπεξάγει* (which latter form would be marked as Virtual Indirect Speech by *its tense*).

Exercise 79 [A].

1. They appointed Cleon general because those who had been appointed before could not take the island.
2. They accused Miltiades because, as they said, he had received bribes.
3. The allies revolted because they were unwilling to pay tribute.
4. They threw away their arms because they could no longer resist the enemy.

¹ *ὅτι* and *διότι* explain what has *preceded*.

5. He caused these islands to revolt from the Persians as they had treated them badly.
6. For my own part I believe he was angry because he was not appointed general.
7. They were angry with Themistocles for persuading them to leave the city.
8. They were honoured by all because they served the state both in public and private to the best of their ability.
9. The island was reduced because it had revolted from the Athenians.
10. They blamed the general for not giving orders to punish the tribes which had revolted.

Exercise 80 [B]

1. The Milesians revolted because they were oppressed by the Persians.
2. The Milesians revolted on the ground that they were oppressed by the Persians.
3. They do not suffer because they remain in their ranks.
4. He was made general because he had saved the army in the former war.
5. The Milesians resisted bravely because they knew the Persians would not spare them if defeated.
6. A plague sprang up in the Greek army because the gods were angry with them.
7. Since for a long time they gave me no answer, I delayed.
8. Do not reproach him for being unfortunate.
9. Since he did his duty you ought not to reproach him.
10. Homer praised Agamemnon because he was a good king.

USE OF TENSES IN THE MOODS

40. Except in the Indicative and Participles (and the Infinitive and Optative when these stand in Indirect Speech for the Indicative of the Direct) there is no distinction of time between the Present and Aorist. When they differ, it is only in that the Present expresses the action as *going on* or *repeated*, while the Aorist expresses simply the fact of its occurrence. (Compare the difference between the Imperfect and Aorist Indicative, page 10.)

EXAMPLES.

<i>εἰ γὰρ σὺ λέγοις ὡς ὁ Δημοσθένης.</i>
<i>May you be a speaker like Demosthenes!</i>
<i>ὥλοιο. May you perish!</i>

<i>βούλομαι νικᾶν ἀεί.</i>
<i>I wish always to be victorious.</i>
<i>βούλομαι νικῆσαι τήμερον.</i>
<i>I wish to gain a victory to-day.</i>

N.B. — The Future Optative should only be used in Indirect Speech after Historic Tenses to represent the Future Indicative of the Direct Speech ; and it is more usual to retain the Future Indicative.

e.g. *εἰπεν ὅτι τἀλλα αὐτὸς* { *πράξοι.*
πράξει.

He said that he himself would manage the rest.

Exercise 81 [A].

1. May we always remain faithful to our king !
2. May the Greeks and Persians immediately desist from the war, and may the peace last for a long time !
3. Let us not now stop the voyage, but let us sail on to the island.
4. The master commanded the slave to give him a sword.
5. Let us not remain here, but go out at once.
6. May he never see his native land again !
7. May this plague never come to our city !
8. Let us kill the slaves who betrayed their master.
9. O that the war would cease and the soldiers remain at home !
10. Let them try to be braver than the men of old.

Exercise 82 [B].

1. Let us loose the horses and set out at once.
2. Cyrus commanded the soldiers to remain in the camp.
3. They were all willing to die for their country.
4. We thought that he was dying, but suddenly he stood up.
5. May they never find out that he died (as) a slave !
6. Let us always give money to the poor.
7. O that our soldiers may conquer the enemy in this battle !
8. Tell your slaves to give these beautiful prizes to the boy.
9. They seemed to speak the truth now, but I thought they lied before.
10. Do not now go out of the house, and do not always wish to be seen by the people.

FINAL SENTENCES

41. Purpose may be expressed in Greek in three ways—

(a) By the particles *ἴνα*, *ὅπως*, *ώς*, the verb in the Final Clause being in the Subjunctive if the Principal Verb is Primary, in the Optative if the Principal Verb is Historic. Negative *μή*.

But, by the ‘Graphic Construction’ (see p. 48), the Subjunctive may also frequently be used instead of the Optative even after an historic tense.

e.g. *μάχονται ὅπως τὴν πόλιν λάβωσι.*

They fight in order to take the city.

ἀπέφευγον ἵνα μὴ ληφθεῖεν }
ληφθῶσι }

They were running away that they might not be caught.

(b) By the Future Participle. Negative *οὐ*.

e.g. *ἡλθον λυσόμενοι τοὺς πολίτας.*

They came to ransom the citizens.

ώς may be used with this Participle, implying that it expresses the alleged purpose or presumed purpose of the subject of the Principal Verb.

e.g. *παρεσκευάζοντο ώς πολεμήσουντες.*

They made preparations with the intention of going to war.

(c) By the relative *ὅτις* with the Future Indicative even when dependent on a Historic tense. Negative *μή*.

e.g. *πρέσβεις ἔπειμψαν οἵτινες ταῦτα ἀπαγγελοῦσι τῷ βασιλεῖ.*

They sent ambassadors to announce this to the king.

Exercise 83 [A].

1. I sent messengers to announce this.
2. You must use all means to deceive Brasidas.
3. Call Brasidas to the Senate that we may consult him.
4. I hope Demosthenes will be here to speak on my behalf.
5. I made haste in order to be present.
6. The victors returned to set up a trophy.
7. We accused him in order that he might not be allowed to leave the city.
8. Three hundred were left to bury the dead.
9. We will go home by another way in order that there may be food for us on the march.
10. We must make the camp bigger, to receive all the allies.

Exercise 84 [B].

1. In order not to be deceived, watch Brasidas carefully.
2. That poet wrote in order to win prizes.
3. Send slaves to inform him of these things.
4. They summoned the doctor to attend to him.¹
5. Themistocles sent ambassadors to deceive the Spartans.
6. He does all this to appear wise.
7. Let us send out scouts everywhere to learn what is going on.
8. We sent messengers to ascertain what had happened.
9. He burnt the ships, so that Cyrus might not cross the river.
10. Send a Spartan to command the army.

¹ θεραπεύω with Accusative.

Exercise 85 [A].

1. The general sent out messengers to discover where the enemy had encamped.
2. We must advance quickly, that no one may see us.
3. We are come to make peace.
4. Brasidas went to Thrace to fight against the Athenians.
5. In order not to break the truce, the Greeks remained all day in the camp.
6. They said this not to deceive us but to persuade the rulers.
7. Soldiers were sent by the general both to bury the dead and erect a trophy.
8. They accused us falsely, that they might obtain our money.
9. The Spartans destroyed the walls of Athens, that the Athenians might never be powerful again.
10. These ships have come to bring wine and food to Athens.

Exercise 86 [B].

1. Many men went to Delphi to consult the god.
2. Did you not send these men to find out what we were doing?
3. They made a trench and a wall to defend the city.
4. We sent for the doctor, that we ourselves might not seem to have killed him.
5. In order not to receive the presents, he went away from home.
6. We hid the money to deceive the judge.
7. They sent out messengers in all directions to discover where we were.
8. The satrap sent for Alcibiades, to learn what was happening at Athens.
9. We will set out in the ships to discover new lands.
10. He does not often come to Athens, lest the Spartans should consider him a traitor.

VERBS OF FEARING

42. (1) Fear for the Future—μή or (if negative) μὴ οὐ with Subjunctive or Optative as in the Final construction.¹

e.g. δέδοικα μὴ ἀμάρτησ, { *I fear you will (may) make a mistake.*

ἔφοβούμην μὴ οὐκ¹ } *I was afraid he would not arrive.*
ἀφίκοιτο (or ἀφίκηται), }

(2) Fear for the Present or Past—μή or μή οὐ with Indicative.

e.g. φοβοῦμαι μὴ ἀμαρ- } *I fear you are making a mistake.*
τάνεις,

ἔφοβούμην μὴ ἦμαρ- } *I was afraid you had made a
τες, } mistake.*

(3) Where English uses the Infinitive after *fear*, Greek also does.

e.g. φοβοῦμαι εἰσιέναι, *I am afraid to enter.*

VERBS OF PRECAUTION ('take care,' etc.)

43. These may take construction (1) above, but their commonest construction is ὅπως or ὅπως μή with the Future Indicative.

e.g. φυλάσσον ὅπως μὴ κακὸς φανεῖ.

Take care you don't appear a coward.

The governing verb (if it is an Imperative 2nd Person) may be omitted in this construction.

e.g. ὅπως ἀνδρεῖοι φανεῖσθε.

See that you show yourselves brave men.

¹ Translate μή by 'lest' and there will be no difficulty with the negatives after Verbs of Fearing.

Exercise 87 [A].

1. I was afraid the judges would condemn him.
2. I am afraid that no one will come to our help.
3. There is danger that they will attack us unexpectedly.
4. They obeyed him, fearing they would be punished.
5. I am afraid I appear very cowardly to you.
6. Take care you do not speak evil of the judges.
7. I wrote it down, for fear I might not remember it.
8. I am afraid he is not becoming more prudent.
9. I was afraid to ask him for money.
10. I was afraid we might suffer the same again.
11. Are you not afraid he will do you some harm ?

Exercise 88 [B].

1. I am afraid that we shall not be able to return home.
2. They took care that no one should deceive them.
3. We were afraid to march by night.
4. They are afraid that the general is dead.
5. We ought to be on our guard lest the orator should accuse us.
6. We were afraid that they would wish to injure us.
7. We must take precautions that the enemy may not attack us unawares.
8. Were you not afraid that you would lose all the money ?
9. I am exceedingly afraid that this is true.
10. Perseus was afraid that his friends would see the Gorgon's head.
11. Do not be afraid to do good to the strangers.

CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES

44. Consecutive Clauses are generally expressed by the Conjunction *ωστε* followed by the Infinitive (negative *μή*); but when stress is laid on the actual occurrence of the consequence, they are expressed by *ωστε* with the Indicative (negative *οὐ*).

EXAMPLES.

οὐχ οὕτω μῶρος ἦν ωστε ἐκείνῳ πείθεσθαι.
I was not foolish enough to obey him.

οὕτω ταχέως ἔδραμον ωστε μηδένα αὐτοὺς λαβεῖν.
They ran so quickly that no one could catch them.
They ran too quickly for any one to catch them.

οὐκ ἥλθεν· ωστε πάντες ἐθαύμαζον.
He did not come, so that all men wondered.

N.B.—(1) *ἐφ'* φ and *ἐφ'* ωτε, *on condition that*, take either the Infinitive like *ωστε*, or the Future Indicative. Negative always *μή*.

e.g. *συνέβησαν ἐφ' ὧτε { ἐξίεναι } ἐκ Πελοποννήσου.*

They made an agreement on condition that they should leave the Peloponnesus.

(2) Notice the use of a Comparative with *ἢ* *ωστε* to represent the English ‘too’ with an Adjective.

e.g. *μεῖζόν ἐστι τὸ κακὸν ἢ ωστε φέρειν δύνασθαι.*
The evil is too great for me to bear.

Exercise 89 [A].

1. The Spartans were so poor that they were always willing to receive money.
2. The war came to an end, so that all the soldiers returned home.
3. I will do this on condition that you speak to no one.
4. He was wiser than to speak evil of the judge.
5. They escaped from the house so as not to be burnt.
6. The general was so careless that he often let slip an opportunity.
7. They were too brave to fear death.
8. I will let you use these books on condition that you return them to me quickly.
9. He was so strong that he could himself endure all the hardships.
10. He was clearly a traitor, so that the general gave orders to put him to death.

Exercise 90 [B].

1. Few are so bold as not to dread Philip.
2. The army was so afraid that the general did not dare to attack.
3. They made peace on condition that the Athenians gave back the prisoners.
4. He is too clever not to know this.
5. Demosthenes spoke so well that he often persuaded the Athenians against their will.
6. The fleet was too weak even to set sail from the harbour.
7. On condition that you give me back the money, I will not accuse you.
8. He is too lazy to learn anything.
9. The danger was so great that the Thebans wished to return home.
10. I hope you will speak so as to persuade them.
11. They brought enough provisions into the town to hold out for three years.

Exercise 91 [A].

1. Philip besieged Olynthus so closely that the citizens could no longer get provisions.
2. They tried to obtain allies so as not to fight the Persians alone.
3. He chose the best soldiers to defend the walls.
4. He made his own army weaker so that he might send help to the Thebans.
5. The citizens were so disheartened that they summoned Alcibiades home.
6. The Syracusans were building a new wall so that they might not be surrounded.
7. The Athenians spent so much money at home in the time of Demosthenes that they had no pay for the soldiers.
8. In order to provide pay for the soldiers the Spartan generals begged money from the Persians.
9. To defeat them we must attack them unawares.
10. We are too near the enemy to encamp here.

Exercise 92 [E].

1. Go away quickly so that no one may see you.
2. They were so wise that many came to consult them.
3. The ships were saved, so that all the city rejoiced.
4. We will go to the help of the Spartans on condition that they give us a larger sum of money.
5. Cyrus led a Greek army to overthrow his brother's empire.
6. He was too honourable to speak evil of the judge.
7. He gave a large bribe to the rulers that he might never be banished from the city.
8. They remained at home so that they might not see the enemy enter the city.
9. So good a leader was Xenophon that the Greeks came safely to the sea.
10. So many men had perished that we could not bury the dead.

Exercise 93 [A].

One day, when the Cretans were on the seashore offering sacrifices to Poseidon, King Minos begged Poseidon to send him a bull out of the sea, that the Cretans might know how greatly the gods honoured him ; and he promised to sacrifice it to Poseidon. Immediately there came, borne on the waves, a most beautiful bull. But Minos admired it so much that he sacrificed another bull and kept the one which had come out of the sea. Poseidon thereupon punished him by making the bull mad ; he escaped into the forest so quickly that no one could catch him. Then Minos was so terrified that he wished he had kept his word, for he feared that many would be destroyed by the monster.

Exercise 94 [A].

Whilst the king was wondering what he ought to do, Heracles arrived and promised to capture the bull ; for Eurystheus had commanded him to bring it to Thebes. Minos was so rejoiced that he willingly gave him ropes and spears ; and having received these Heracles went out into the forest to seek for the bull. It was not difficult to find him, for he was making so loud a noise that it was heard in all directions. When Heracles approached, the bull ran towards him so swiftly that it was impossible to avoid him. But Heracles, standing firmly, seized his horns and held them so that the bull could not raise his head again. After a short time he became so exhausted that Heracles led him to the city to show him to all the citizens.

Exercise 95 [B].**REVISION.**

Thus the Athenian fleet won a victory, and the Lacedaemonians were so disheartened that they no longer tried to besiege Mytilene. But in the battle a great number of the Athenians had perished, and when the Lacedaemonians sailed away many were still seen clinging to the wrecks. The generals therefore, determining themselves to pursue the enemy, left certain ships behind and gave orders that these men should be saved. But a storm immediately arising, the officers of these ships, fearing that their own vessels might suffer harm, sailed away. When the news of this came to Athens the people ordered that the generals should be put on trial, and they were too enraged to listen to their defence. To escape the penalty two of the generals never returned, but those who had returned were put to death.

Exercise 96 [B].**REVISION.**

After the death of Cadmus many more people came to live in the Cadmea. Here they built many houses, so that at length they made a large city which they called Thebes. The Cadmea became the citadel of Thebes, and the king bade the citizens fortify it with very strong walls, in order that when an enemy attacked the city the inhabitants might take refuge in the citadel. There was once a king of Thebes called Amphion, who sang so beautifully that all things were compelled to obey him, and even the stones used to follow him. Knowing this, he began to sing in the middle of the city, and so many stones came together to hear him sing that in a short time a stone wall was built round the city.

Exercise 97 [A].**REVISION.**

1. May they never be base enough to betray the city !
2. I was afraid they would come to attack us.
3. Do not suppose that they did not see you.
4. So great was their wisdom that people came to see them from all sides.
5. At the approach of spring we will set out to besiege the town.
6. Those who sought refuge in the Acropolis were too few to resist the enemy.
7. May you never discover who told me this !
8. Let them not fear that we shall do them harm.
9. We sent many messengers to find out where you had gone.
10. I will go to the king on condition that you give me a large reward.

Exercise 98 [B].

REVISION.

1. We must be on our guard lest they should deceive us.
2. They were surrounded by the mountains so that they could not escape.
3. Let us fly for refuge to the mountains that the enemy may not catch us.
4. So closely was the city besieged that the citizens could get no provisions.
5. They resisted a long time, so that even the enemy marvelled at them.
6. Do not be afraid to speak.
7. I know that he is ill, and I am afraid he is dead.
8. These men were too brave to fly, and they were all killed.
9. Would that I might perish, so as not to see the enemy in our city.
10. We will spare you on condition that you throw away your arms.

Exercise 99 [A]**REVISION.**

1. They were ordered to march all day.
2. I am not afraid they will attack us unprepared.
3. The general sent forward cavalry to get information.¹
4. Let us persuade them not to run² into danger.
5. Do not tell me that they have chosen Cleon.
6. Why do you forbid our remaining here?
7. May we always be allies and never enemies!
8. He is too good to do harm to any one.
9. He commanded them to find out how many the enemy were.
10. Take care not to acquit the guilty.

¹ To find out what was being done.

² Say come into danger.

Exercise 100 [B].**REVISION.**

1. Do not return here.
2. They promised to acquit me on condition that I accused my friends.
3. He exhorted the soldiers not to fear danger.
4. The scouts went forward in order to perceive the enemy approaching.
5. They asked why Cleon was general.
6. Those who returned to Athens were put to death ; but those who remained in Asia escaped.
7. I knew the enemy would conquer us.
8. I was afraid the enemy would conquer us.
9. I think that, with Brasidas for general, we shall be victorious.
10. Do you know how long the battle lasted ?

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

45. Conditions may be divided into two classes :—

- A.** Conditions relating to the Present or Past.
- B.** Conditions relating to the Future.

A. PRESENT AND PAST CONDITIONS.

In these conditions the question of fulfilment is already decided, but we may or may not wish to imply anything with regard to this. Present and Past Conditions, therefore, fall into two classes :—

(1) Where we simply assume the condition without implying anything as to its fulfilment. Such conditions are—

‘If the well is full, it rained yesterday.’

‘If Gracchus conspired against the state, he was justly slain.’

‘If the gods do base actions, they are not gods.’

‘If you know this, you are wiser than I.’

‘If a triangle has equal sides it has also equal angles.’¹

The construction of these is—

Protasis—ει with the Indicative.

Apodosis—generally the Indicative.²

e.g. εἰ ἐβρόντησε, καὶ ἤστραψεν.

If it thundered it also lightened.

(2) When we imply that the condition is not or has not been fulfilled.

‘If you were not helping us, we should not try.’

¹ Observe that all hypotheses in Euclid are of this kind. They simply assume a certain condition for argument's sake, and show what the result is if the condition be fulfilled.

² But the apodosis may often take the form of a command, a wish, or a question.

'If he had taken my advice, he would have recovered.'

'If he had taken my advice, he would now be well.'

The construction of these is—

Protasis—*εἰ* with a Past tense of the Indicative.

Apodosis—A Past tense of the Indicative with *ἄν*.

The Aorist is to be used of a simple occurrence in Past time, the Imperfect of the Present time or of an act continued or repeated in Past time.

e.g. *εἰ μὴ ἐπλούτουν οὐκ ἀν ἡρχον.*

If I were not rich, I should not be ruling.

εἰ ἥμαρτον ἀπέθανον ἄν.

If I had made a mistake, I should have been put to death.

εἰ εὖ ἐπαιδεύθης, οὐκ ἀν ἡγνόεις.¹

If you had been well educated, you would not be ignorant.

B. FUTURE CONDITIONS.

We may state Future Conditions in two ways:—

(1) We may make a distinct supposition of a future case—

'If he does this,' or 'If he shall do this.'

The construction is—

Protasis—*ἴαν* with the Subjunctive or less frequently *εἰ* with the Future Indicative.²

Apodosis—naturally a Future Indicative.³

e.g. *ἴαν ζητήσης εύρισεις.*

If you seek you will find.

εἰ κλέψεις δίκην δώσεις.

If you steal you will be punished.

¹ In this example the protasis contains a condition relating to the Past (and hence uses the Aorist), while the apodosis expresses what would have been the Present consequence (and hence uses the Imperfect).

² As being a stronger and more precise form of expression, *εἰ* with the Future Indicative is especially used in threats and warnings.

³ But the apodosis may often take the form of a command, a wish, or a question.

(2) We may put the case less vividly, more 'remotely,' i.e. in a form which represents the condition as less likely to be fulfilled—'If he should do this,' or 'If he were to do this,' or 'If he did this.'

Protasis—*cl with the Optative.*

Apodosis—Optative with *ān*.

e.g. *εἰ ζητοίης, εὗροις ἄν.*

If you were to seek, you would find.

Further Examples of Conditionals—

A. (1) *εἰ τάδ' ἀγνοεῖς, κακῶς ἐπαιδεύθης.*

If you do not know this, you were badly educated.

εἰ πέπραχε τοῦτο, καλῶς ἔξει.

If he has done this, it will be well.

(2) *εἰ ταῦτα ἤκουσε, τὰ αὐτὰ ἂν ἔπραξε.*

If he had heard this, he would have done the same.

εἰ τότε ἔζης, καὶ σὺ τὸν Περικλέα ἀν ἐθαύμαζες.

If you had been living then, you too would have been an admirer of Pericles.

εἰ τότε ἐν τῇ Περσικῇ ἔζης, τῷ σεισμῷ ἀπέθaves.

If you had been living in Persia at that time, you would have been killed by the earthquake.

B. (1) *ἐὰν ἔλθῃς νῦν, πότε ἔσει οἴκοι;*

If you go now, when will you be at home?

εἰ ταῦτα λέξεις κακὸς φανεῖ.

If you are going to say this, you will appear a coward.

(2) *οὐ γὰρ ἂν με ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐπαινοίη, εἰ ἔξελαύνοιμι τοὺς εὑεργέτας.*

For the king would not praise me if I banished my benefactors.

εἰ ταῦτα λέγοις, κακὸς ἀν φαίνοιο.

If you were to say this, you would appear to be a coward.

Exercise 101.

1. If you say this you are ignorant.
2. If you do this you will suffer.
3. If you had done this you would have suffered.
4. If you were to do this you would suffer.
5. If you had done this you would be suffering.
6. If they come I shall see them.
7. If they had come I should have seen them.
8. If they said this they were mistaken.
9. If I do not see you I will write.
10. If I had seen you I should not have written.
11. If I were not here they would have written.
12. If I were to see them I should not write.

Exercise 102 [A].

1. If the army had not arrived the city would have been taken.
2. If we do not march at once the city will be taken.
3. If I had been present myself these things would not have happened.
4. If there are gods there are also works of gods.
5. If they had been acting thus they would not now be safe.
6. If I write to you, set out at once.
7. If this is so I was mistaken.
8. If they were to come we should all rejoice.
9. If they do not come, let us keep the gifts ourselves.
10. If you had been present no one would have dared to speak.

Exercise 103 [B].

1. If they send Brasidas they will defeat the Athenians.
2. If Brasidas had not been in Thrace the Athenians would have been victorious.
3. If he said that, he lies.
4. If Demosthenes had been speaking I should have listened.
5. If you were to speak I should listen.
6. If you do not come at once I shall not wait.
7. If this was the case they were cowards.
8. If the messengers had arrived, all would have been well.
9. If you plotted against the city you would be banished.
10. If you plotted against the city you were a traitor.

Exercise 104 [A].

1. We shall acquit you if you accuse your comrades.
2. If you had not banished Alcibiades, Athenians, you would not be suffering these evils.
3. If Philip took Potidaea without our help, is he not able also to take Olynthus ?
4. If a Spartan were to do such a thing, he would be punished.
5. It will be best for us if Philip opposes us at Pydna.
6. If he said that, he made a mistake.
7. If you have any one able to give better advice, choose him general.
8. If he were to learn where this money is hidden he would steal it.
9. If I knew, I would tell you.
10. If I had not sought for it I should never have found it.

Exercise 105 [B].

1. If you help this man, you will appear base.
2. You would be very unjust if you blamed me.
3. If Harmodius slew the tyrant he benefited the Athenians.
4. If Philip is now master of Thermopylae, he is able to march without hindrance¹ into Attica.
5. The Athenians will be glad if Alcibiades be banished.
6. If you had been taught by Socrates you would not think thus.
7. If peace were made all would be well.
8. If they have received my letter they will welcome you as a friend.
9. If they had not guarded the gates, the city would have been taken.
10. If you are ready at dawn, we will start then.

¹ No one hindering.

Exercise 106 [A].

A herald went through the city making the following proclamation to the Thebans:—‘If any one dares to bury Polynices or any of the Argives, he will be put to death.’ But Antigone, the sister of Polynices, loved her brother so dearly that she resolved to disobey the king, even if she should lose her life by doing this. Therefore in the night she went out and buried the body. When the king learnt what she had done he was very angry, but still he would have pardoned her if she had been willing to confess that she had done wrong. But she boldly said, ‘If I have acted rightly, I am not afraid to die.’ Then the king, growing still more angry, commanded his guards to shut her up in a cave that she might die of hunger.

Exercise 107 [B].

Then Demosthenes came forward and spoke as follows:—‘Athenians, if you send ambassadors to Philip to ask for peace, you will only increase our present danger; for he will perceive that you are afraid of him, and will therefore have greater hopes of conquering you. But why do you fear him? If he were as powerful as you suppose, he would have conquered all his other enemies and would be marching against you. But as it is, he is surrounded on all sides by enemies, and even if he conquers them his army will be much weaker than before, so that we shall be able to attack him with confidence. Do not therefore despair, but fortify the city as strongly as possible, and collect more forces to fight against the common enemy of Greece.’

Exercise 108 [A].

Had they not trusted Alcibiades there would have been a panic in the town. But Alcibiades called the garrison together and spoke as follows :—‘Comrades, you have heard by what disaster Athens has lost her fleet. It is for us¹ now to consider what it is most expedient for us to do. If I were still your general I would command you. But, as things are now, I can only advise you to take service under the Thracian for the present. If any one of you is in want of money immediately, let him ask for it, and if the opportunity ever comes I will show my thanks to you by gifts many times greater. May you, under some more fortunate general, yet render service to² the Athenians and all Greece.

Exercise 109 [B].

When the army had been drawn up for battle, the general thus addressed the soldiers : ‘If we were now about to fight in a foreign country to increase our own possessions, the gods would perhaps be on the side of the enemy. But if the gods help men who are defending their native land, they ought now at least to be helping us. In the days of our fathers the Greeks would never have conquered the Persians if the gods had not been on their side ; and our present enemies have shown themselves even more impious than the Persians. If, then, we fight bravely, believing that the gods themselves will help us, we shall conquer.

¹ ἡμέτερον ἔστι.

² help.

PARTICLES

Certain usages of Particles have been already described on pp. 12, 34, 52, and 94.

To these we may add the following:—

46. The Participle used to express the cause or ground of an action is frequently emphasised by *ἄτε*, *inasmuch as*, or *ώς*, *on the ground that*. The latter implies that what is stated by the Participle is given as the thought or statement of the subject of the principal verb. Negative *οὐ*.

e.g. οἱ Κῦρος ἄτε παῖς ᾧν ἥδετο τῇ στολῇ.

Cyrus, as being a child, was delighted with the dress.

τὸν Περικλέα ἐν αἰτίᾳ εἶχον ως πείσαντα σφᾶς πολεμεῖν.

They blamed Pericles on the ground that he had induced them to go to war.

47. The Participle may be used as a substitute for the protasis of a Conditional sentence. Negative *μή*.

e.g. τοῦτο μὴ ποιοῦντες (=εἰ μὴ τοῦτο ποιοῖεν) οὐκ ἀν εὖ πράττοιεν.

Unless they did this they would not prosper.

48. The Participle may be used concessively. In this sense it is frequently emphasised by *καὶ* or *καίπερ*. Negative *οὐ*.

e.g. ἐποικτίρω αὐτὸν καίπερ δυσμενῆ ὄντα.

I pity him though he is my enemy.

Where ‘*although*’ means ‘*even if*,’ introducing a condition and not an admitted fact, it should be translated by *καὶ εἰ* or *καὶ εἴναι* with the suitable form of conditional sentence.

49. Comparative Clauses are expressed by ὡσπερ, as if, with the Participle. Negative οὐ.

οὐκ ἐθέλετ' ἀκούειν, ὡσπερ ἥδη εἰδότες.

You are unwilling to listen, as if you knew it all already.

50. The Participles ἔχων and ἄγων are constantly equivalent to the English *with*.

e.g. ἀφίκετο ἄγων (ἔχων) τριακοσίους ὥπλιτας.

He arrived with 300 hoplites.

Notice that a Participle follows these verbs:—φαίνομαι, *I appear*; χαίρω and ἥδομαι, *I am pleased*; παύομαι and λήγω, *I cease*; ἅρχω, *I begin*; διατελέω, *I continue*; τυγχάνω, *I happen*; λανθάνω, *I remain hid, escape notice*; φθάνω, *I anticipate*.

e.g. φαίνεται σοφὸς ὁν.

He is manifestly wise.¹

διατελεῖ ὄργιζόμενος,

He continues angry.

ἔτυχεν ἐλθών.

He happened to have come.

ἔφθασεν ἡμᾶς ἀφικόμενος. *He arrived before us*
(He anticipated us arriving).

ἔλαθεν αὐτοὺς φύγων.

He escaped without being seen by them
(He was hidden escaping).

ἔλαθεν (ἐαυτὸν) ποιήσας *He did it unawares.*

The last two verbs may also have their construction inverted, e.g. ἀφίκετο φθάσας, ᔁφυγε λαθών.

¹ i.e. *Being wise he is made manifest.* φαίνεται σοφὸς εἴναι has a slightly different sense, 'he appears to be wise.'

Exercise 110 [A].

1. We happened to be present while the orator was speaking.
2. They ceased from fighting at the command of the general.
3. They escaped from the city without being observed by the guards.
4. They were put to death on the charge of plotting against the city.
5. It is our duty to obey the king although he is not always just.
6. We reached the city first.
7. We pardoned him because he did not know what he was doing.
8. The general advanced with an army of 12,000 men.
9. They killed all the prisoners, and that too though they knew they were innocent.
10. We got to the mountain before the enemy.

Exercise 111 [B].

1. This boy came in first in the race.¹
2. The ships came into the harbour without being seen by the enemy.
3. The Athenians blamed Miltiades on the ground that he had received bribes.
4. As he was a boy, the judges pardoned him.

¹ say running.

5. Those who happened to hear him were greatly surprised.
6. We dismissed the prisoners, and that too though we knew they had plotted against us.
7. They blamed the generals for not saving the sailors.
8. They said this as if they knew that we should believe them.
9. They ceased from the war because both the generals had been killed.
10. The slaves came with many splendid presents from the king.

Exercise 112 [A].

1. I was delighted to welcome your friends.
2. Though he was not my brother I treated him as if he were.
3. Why do you keep on asking me the same questions ?
4. He was plainly very much ashamed.
5. He came to me with no money ; but I gave him all that he needed because he was my father's friend.
6. If you stop threatening me I will listen to you.
7. They banished Thucydides on the ground that he had lost Amphipolis by his carelessness.
8. The Athenians and Spartans began striving for the leadership of the Greeks in the time of Cimon.
9. They happened to have sent the fleet to Lemnos.
10. Get there before him, if you can

Exercise 113 [B].

1. He continued to live at Athens though he was hated by all the citizens.
2. They were put to death on the charge of plotting against the government.
3. I believe that Brasidas and his men will reach the city first.
4. Although the Athenians knew that Aristides was just, they were not pleased at always hearing this.
5. They escaped unobserved from the city and embarked in the ship.
6. We all rejoiced to hear that you had arrived safely.
7. They carefully preserved the shield as it had been sent by the gods.
8. The general resolved to advance cautiously though the enemy had left their camp.
9. They were plainly Greeks, though we could not understand what they said.
10. We reached the mountains before the enemy, and pitched our camp in a strong position.

Exercise 114 [A].

When many years had passed, there came a messenger to Thebes to tell Oedipus that King Polybus was dead, and to beg him to return to Corinth and be king of the city. But Oedipus would not return on account of the oracle; for though the king was dead, the queen was still alive, and he feared that some madness might compel him to desire to marry her. He told this to the messenger, who happened to be the herdsman who had found Oedipus in the forest when he was a child. Then the old man, as if he were doing the king a service, informed him that he was not the son of Polybus, but had been found on Mount Cithaeron with his feet tied¹ with a string.

Exercise 115 [B].

When Jocasta heard this, she perceived that Oedipus was her son; and when Oedipus began to enquire about his father, he found out that he was the king whom he had himself killed. Then because he could no longer bear to see his mother, he put out² his own eyes, and his mother went to her room and died by her own hand³. Thereupon the Thebans banished him, on the ground that if he remained all the citizens would suffer. Oedipus, after wandering for many years in company with his daughter Antigone, at last came to Athens, where he continued to live for the future.

¹ tied as to his feet.² ἐκκεντέω.³ αὐτοχειρί.

IMPERSONAL VERBS

51. The following verbs take the Dative and the Infinitive :—

<i>δοκεῖ μοι</i>	<i>it seems (good) to me, I am resolved.</i>
<i>πρέπει μοι</i>	<i>it becomes me.</i>
<i>προσήκει μοι</i>	<i>it concerns me.</i>
<i>συμφέρει μοι</i>	<i>it is expedient for me.</i>
<i>λυσιτελεῖ μοι</i>	<i>it is profitable for me.</i>
<i>ἔξεστί μοι }</i>	<i>it is possible for me, I may.</i>
<i>πάρεστί μοι }</i>	

δεῖ and *χρή* (Imperf. *χρῆν* or *ἐχρῆν*), *it is necessary (I ought or I must)*, take the Accusative and the Infinitive.

χρή ήμᾶς ταῦτα δρᾶν *we ought to do this.*

χρῆν ήμᾶς ταῦτα δρᾶν *we ought to have done this.*

The following take the Dative of the Person and Genitive of the thing :—

<i>μέτεστί μοι τούτου</i>	<i>I have a share in this.</i>
<i>μέλει μοι τούτου</i>	<i>I care for this.</i>
<i>μεταμέλει μοι τούτου</i>	<i>I repent of this.</i>

ACCUSATIVE ABSOLUTE

52. The Impersonal Verbs use an Accusative Absolute, in the Neuter Singular, instead of a Genitive.

e.g. *ἐξὸν ἀπιέναι προείλοντο μένειν.*

It being permitted (leave being given) to go away, they preferred to stay.

So *δέον λαβεῖν τὴν πόλιν.*

It being necessary to take the city.

δόξαν or *δεδογμένον λαβεῖν τὴν πόλιν.*

It having been determined to take the city.

ἀδύνατον δὲ σημῆναι.

It being impossible to signal.¹

¹ Also *παρόν*, *it being possible.*

προσῆκον, *it being fitting.*

παρασχόν, *an opportunity offering.*

εἰσημένον, *it having been stated or laid down.*

Exercise 116 [A].

1. I hope you repent of your folly.
2. It being necessary to retreat, the soldiers set out at once.
3. These men ought not to have a share in the plunder.
4. We marched with all speed, as it had been resolved to encamp early.
5. Although it was possible for them to ransom the king, they left him in the foreign land.
6. You ought to have given them what they asked.
7. As it was impossible to advance on account of the snow, they halted.
8. I think it is to our advantage to give back the prisoners.
9. The orator spoke as if it were necessary to give up the city.
10. Themistocles wished to equip a fleet on the ground that it was impossible to resist the Persians by land.

Exercise 117 [B].

1. We have no part in this matter.
2. Do you not repent of what you have done ?
3. He went away after hearing this, as if it was not necessary for him to answer.
4. Surely you ought to have come to our help with a large force ?
5. He clearly thought that his friends had resolved to wait.
6. I advised them to surrender on the ground that it was impossible to hold out any longer.
7. I suppose this is not wrong, but I say that it is not expedient for us.
8. The Romans were all killed, although they might have escaped.
9. If we have no share in the booty we will never fight again.
10. Let us fight bravely now that we have an opportunity of saving our country.

VERBAL ADJECTIVES

53. The verbal adjective in *-τέος* implies **necessity**. It has two constructions, Personal and Impersonal. **The agent is expressed by the Dative.**

(a) In the **Personal Construction** the form *-τέος*, *-τέα*, *-τέον* is used. This (like the Latin Gerundive) is always **passive**, and can therefore be used **only with transitive verbs**.

e.g. *ῳφελητέα ἔστιν ήμūν οὐ πόλις.*

We must help the city.

(b) In the **Impersonal Construction** the forms . . . *τέον* (neuter singular of . . . *τέος*) and sometimes . . . *τέα* (neuter plural) are used, with *ἔστι* expressed or understood. This construction is active in sense, and **the objects are in the case governed by the verb.**

e.g. *ταῦτα ήμūν ποιητέον ἔστιν.*

We must do this (Note that *ταῦτα* is the direct object of *ποιητέον*).

Βοηθητέον ήμūν οὖν τῇ πόλει.

We had to help the state.

54. The construction (b) is equivalent to *δεῖ* or *χρῆ* (*it is necessary*) with the Accusative of the person and the Infinitive. Thus *ταῦτα ήμūν ποιητέον ἔστι* might equally well be rendered *δεῖ ήμᾶς ταῦτα ποιῆσαι.*

Exercise 118 [A].

1. We must not give up our allies to the Athenians.
2. He told the soldiers that they must not despise the enemy.
3. A share of the booty must be given to the allies.
4. He had to give his daughter in marriage to a poor man.
5. You must not give away so large a sum of money.
6. Surely we must honour those who died on behalf of their country.
7. The general announced that a start must be made at once.
8. They knew that they must undertake the matter themselves.
9. The captains passed the word along that the army was to go to the help of the allies.
10. The Athenians had been told that they must leave their city, and remove to Salamis.

Exercise 119 [B].

1. We must all give up our possessions.
2. We had to remove so as not to fall into the hands of the enemy.
3. The garrison were informed that the city must be surrendered.
4. You must sell your house to provide bread.
5. They were told that they must bring food and clothes for the strangers.
6. They had to set out at once to reach the island in time.
7. As he was once my guest, I thought I ought to help him.
8. They were aware that they must either betray the city or be killed.
9. Word was passed along the lines that an attack was to be made immediately.
10. The men of old, who won this great empire for us, must always be held in honour.

PRONOUNS

(Before this Lesson pages 38-41 should be revised.)

55. Reflexive.

The usual Reflexive of the 3rd person is ἑαυτόν. The Reflexive εἴ with its plural σφᾶς should only be used in a subordinate clause referring to the subject of the Principal Verb.

e.g. ἀπέκτεινε τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ παῖδας.

He killed his own children.

ἡρούντο διὰ τί σφίσιν οὐκ ἐβοηθήσαμεν.

They asked why we had not come to their help.

56. Demonstratives.

1. Besides the difference explained on page 40, observe that when οὗτος and ἕκεῖνος are opposed they frequently mean 'the latter,' 'the former,' respectively; and when οὗτος and ὅδε are opposed, they frequently mean 'the preceding,' and 'the following.'

e.g. τῶν στρατηγῶν ἕκεῖνος μὲν ἀνδρειότερος ἦν οὗτος
δὲ εὐτυχέστερος.

Of the generals, the former was more brave, the latter more successful.

οἱ μὲν ταῦτα ἤρετο οἱ δὲ τάδε ἀπεκρίνατο.

The one asked this, and the other answered as follows.¹

¹ There is the same distinction between τοσάντα and τοσάδε, and between οὗτως and ὥδε.

2. On page 40 the use of the Article as a Pronoun in *ο* μέν . . . ο δὲ, etc., has been explained. It is also used as a Pronoun when ο δέ, *but he*, or οι δέ, *but they*, begins a sentence; the Article in this phrase must refer to some person or thing mentioned in the previous sentence but not the subject of the previous sentence.

e.g. οι Πέρσαι τῶν Μιλησίων ἐκράτησαν· οι δὲ μετώκησαν.

The Persians conquered the Milesians, and they (the Milesians) migrated.

Also observe the phrase πρὸ τοῦ, *before that*.

57. Relatives.

The Relative ος is equivalent to the Latin *qui*, but cannot be used interrogatively.

The word οστις is both a General Relative (Latin *quicunque*, whoever) and an Indirect Interrogative, i.e. it is used in asking *Indirect* questions.

58. Attraction of the Relative.

Where the Relative would naturally be Accusative, and the antecedent Genitive or Dative, the latter frequently attracts the Relative to its own case.

e.g. ἔχρητο ταῖς βίβλοις αἷς εἶχεν.
He used the books he had.

Or still more commonly—

ἔχρητο αἷς εἶχε βίβλοις.

Sometimes when the antecedent is governed by a Preposition, the antecedent is omitted and the Preposition governs the Relative.

e.g. ἔξήγγειλεν αὐτῷ περὶ ων ἐποίει.
He informed him of what he was doing.

59. Other Pronouns.

Greek has a Reciprocal ἀλλήλους, *one another*, but may also use ἄλλοι . . . ἄλλον like the Latin *alius . . . alium*. e.g. ἄλλοι ἄλλῳ ἔλεγεν, *one was saying to another*. Like Latin, it also used such contracted phrases as ἄλλοι ἄλλο λέγει, *one says one thing, another says another thing*; ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν, *some from one place, others from another*.

{ ἄλλος = Lat. *alius*, one of any number.

{ ὁ ἔτερος = Lat. *alter*, one of two. (In this sense it must always have the article.)

οἱ ἔτεροι = one of two *parties of people*.

ἕκαστος = Lat. *quisque*, each of any number.¹

ἕκάτερος = Lat. *uterque*, each of two (taken singly).

ἕκάτεροι, each of two parties.

ἀμφότεροι = Lat. *ambo*, both (taken together).

οὐδέτερος } = Lat. *neuter*, neither.
μηδέτερος }

60. Position of Pronouns.

When used with Nouns, οὗτος, ἐκεῖνος, ὅδε, ἕκάτερος, ἀμφότεροι, regularly take the Predicative position, the rest the Attributive position.

e.g. ὅδε ἡ χώρα, *this country*.

ἀμφότεροι οἱ στρατηγοί, *both the generals*.

ἡ τοιαύτη χώρα, *such a country*.

The position taken by αὐτός is explained on p. 38; that taken by Possessive Genitives ἑαυτοῦ, ἑμοῦ, etc., on p. 41.

¹ Notice καθ' ἕκαστον, *singly, each by himself*; ὡς ἕκαστος or ὡς ἕκασται, *each by himself*.

Exercise 120.

1. Tell us who said that.
2. I know the man to whom you were speaking.
3. They knew why the citizens hated them.
4. They were both condemned to death, the one justly, but the other unjustly.
5. Before this most of the soldiers had gone away.
6. Some ships came from one harbour, some from another.
7. Neither of these two men is worthy of honour.
8. That is the man whose sons you killed.
9. Tell me about what you heard.
10. Each of the two armies was defeated.
11. Each of the soldiers received a reward.
12. I gave him back his sword.
13. They did not obey their own king.
14. We ransomed the citizens, and they came home at once.
15. Wise men should honour one another.
16. We cannot defeat so great a force.
17. Having heard this, he replied as follows.
18. Nicias and Demosthenes were both generals of the Athenians, but the latter was more successful than the former.
19. Let us ask them each by himself.
20. I cannot tell what your friends will say.

Exercise 121 [A].

1. The soldiers were unwilling to obey either of the two generals.
2. When the friends reached the river one crossed and the other went back.
3. We gave him a large sum of money, and he immediately went away.
4. Such soldiers are not capable of bearing hardships.
5. They promised to reward the man who had brought them food.
6. The general came to such a pitch of boldness that he was always ready to fight.
7. In the Senate one party voted for war, the other to keep peace.
8. Before this each of the soldiers received three obols a day.
9. The enemy, advancing at a run, charged both wings simultaneously.
10. I informed the general about what I had heard in the camp.
11. This was what Demosthenes said ; and Aeschines replied as follows.
12. Hannibal and Alexander were both great generals, but the latter was more fortunate than the former.
13. When day dawned the survivors looked at one another wondering how many were still alive.

Exercise 122 [B].

1. One of the brothers became king, the other was killed.
2. Though both my sons were dear to me, I esteemed the elder more highly.
3. Before this we believed that both the towns had been destroyed.
4. We gave them food when they were hungry, and they were always grateful to us.
5. Each of the sailors received a large reward from the state.
6. They declared that they were grateful to us for what we had done.
7. They promised to go away if we gave them money.
8. When one of the two orators had spoken thus, the other replied as follows.
9. They reached such a degree of cowardice that they were afraid even of these barbarians.
10. Tell me who gave you the present which you value most highly.
11. Of these Greeks the former was the wiser, the latter the more successful.
12. As the night was dark the soldiers were wounding one another.

Exercise 123.**P R E P O S I T I O N S**

[*A table of Prose usages of Prepositions is given in the Appendix,
page 232.]*

After this.	Up stream.
On account of this.	Down stream.
In addition to this.	In the time of Solon.
To fight on horseback.	He came with his friends.
For the sake of money.	In the presence of the king.
Down from the mountain.	By means of a slave.
According to law.	Day by day.
Contrary to law.	In our power.
Along the river.	With the help of the gods.
Without hope.	It was done by him.
Every ten years.	The king and his followers.
On behalf of his son.	They sailed towards Lemnos.
He spoke of his son.	In the meantime.
He spoke against Nicias.	They were drawn up four deep.

Exercise 124 [A].

1. If you value freedom highly you will never be subject to a tyrant.
2. As they were fighting on horseback they could easily overtake the fugitives.
3. They continued to fight all day long and did not stop till the evening.
4. It was reported that Philip was coming to attack us with as many as 20,000 men.
5. If they had acted contrary to law they would have been punished.
6. According to Pindar we ought to consider water the best of all things.
7. For many reasons I intend to help the Thebans, though they are waging war against my own country.
8. Whilst he was engaged in this he did not observe that the enemy had taken the city by storm. *
9. For the most part philosophers discuss the origin of the world.
10. On this account they were compelled to be on friendly terms with the Athenians.¹
11. I consider it of the utmost importance to remain friendly with Sparta.

¹ Dative alone.

Exercise 125 [B].

1. Except a few, all the Greeks resisted the Persians.
2. I will ask him to wait either instead of me or with me.
3. Those on the right wing were routed by this charge, but the hoplites on the left remained where they had been stationed.
4. It is in your power to confer a great benefit on your country.
5. If they march through our country they will destroy everything.
6. If they had made peace on better terms the peace would have lasted till now.
7. He has done, moreover, brave deeds on behalf of his native land.
8. After this Demosthenes often spoke against the friends of Aeschines.
9. If I were to become engaged on some other work I should not be able to finish this; for which reason I shall not begin it, not even for your sake.
10. He set out for home at the same time as I did; if he has not arrived, I fear something has happened.
11. They first marched along the river, and then, having crossed it by the bridge, encamped near the mountain.

Exercise 126 [A].

Meanwhile certain allies of the Syracusans, while on their way to Syracuse, were at the request of Nicias cut off by the Sikels. Had Nicias taken this step while Gylippus was on his march, the Athenians would perhaps have taken the city. Even now, 800 of these allies were slain, but 1500 reached Syracuse. Soon after this Demosthenes resolved to make a night attack upon the city. His men, in spite of having suffered so many hardships, were full of hope and confidence. They were now going to fight under a general who had won the highest reputation on account of his wisdom and courage, and they all believed that under his command they would take the city at last.

Exercise 127 [B].

In the spring of the following year Scipio set out with not less than 30,000 men for Carthage, which was distant only a few days' journey. He approached the town unobserved and fell unexpectedly upon the Punic garrison of about a thousand men, the fleet attacking from the side of¹ the sea, and the army at the same time from the mainland. Though it was not possible to hope for help, and though there were not enough men in the town to man the walls, Mago, who was in command of the garrison, did not lose heart, but armed the citizens and resisted valiantly. He even made a sortie, which however the Romans easily repulsed.

¹ from,

Exercise 128 [A].**REVISION.**

The army being thus dispirited, Xenophon alone appeared to be of good courage, though he himself did not hope to see Greece again. For now that for a little time the barbarians had ceased from their attacks, the mountains which they saw in front terrified them. Xenophon therefore went about among the soldiers exhorting them. To the captains he said : 'The army chose you to be captains after the death of Clearchus, supposing that you were the bravest and most ready to suffer hardship of us all. If you now show yourselves disheartened, how shall I encourage the rest ?' To the soldiers he spoke thus : 'If a man were to ask me, comrades, why you are so disheartened, I could not answer him ; nor would Cyrus have led you from Sardis to Babylon if he had known you were such men. You have passed through the greater dangers, the less remain. Yet, as if you were not the same men who defeated the Persians, you now shudder at mountains and wild beasts.'

Exercise 129 [B].

REVISION.

When all preparations had been made, Nicias was suddenly terrified by an eclipse of the moon. He sent men to consult the prophets, and declared that he would obey them in everything. According to Thueydides they replied that the army must wait for twenty-seven days, but other writers relate that Nicias himself increased the time. If this is true, who does not consider that Nicias, though he was the most pious of men, was guilty of the basest folly? For if the Athenians had set out without the knowledge of the Syracusans, both the fleet and the army would have been saved; whereas by waiting for so long a time they lost their only chance of escape.

Exercise 130 [A].

REVISION.

Three years later the Spartans, by making a truce for five years, allowed the Athenians to devote their attention to the war against Persia. Cimon eagerly seized¹ this opportunity. At home he was no longer powerful enough to oppose Pericles; but he hoped that at the head of a fleet he would be able not only to defeat the Persians but to enrich both his country and himself. If he had lived he would in all probability have accomplished his object²; but Thueydides tells us that, while he was blockading a city, Cimon died, and that the Athenians, compelled to abandon the siege from lack of food, won a victory both by sea and land over the Phoenicians and Cilicians.

¹ i.e. used.² = what he was intending.

Exercise 131 [E].

REVISION.

In this year the war came to an end. They made peace on condition that the Athenians should restore the prisoners and all the cities taken in the war, and should receive back Amphipolis. If the Lacedaemonians had given up this city the Athenians would gladly have maintained the peace. But though the Lacedaemonians evacuated the town themselves, they refused to hand it over under plea that it was a free town ; and when the Athenians complained the ephors replied : ‘The Lacedaemonians are not in possession of Amphipolis. If the Athenians wish to possess it, let them reduce it themselves.’ Within a short time the Athenians took Amphipolis by siege and treated the citizens cruelly ; but knowing now that the Spartans would not abide by their agreement, they listened to Alcibiades when he advised them to create as many enemies as possible for Sparta in the Peloponnese.

Exercise 132 [A].**REVISION.**

1. If the expedition had started at once they would have reached the town before the enemy.
2. The Athenians reduced this town though it was formerly in the hands of the Cilicians.
3. Peace was made on these conditions and both armies returned home.
4. I happened to be present when Demosthenes was speaking at Athens against Philip.
5. As if they had not heard what had happened, they continued their march towards Amphipolis.
6. Under these circumstances Xenophon resolved to march against the Carduchi and not to attempt to cross the river.
7. If we advance up the river we shall before long reach Babylon.
8. The Athenians made peace with the king on condition that the Ionian cities should be independent.
9. As far as I am concerned you are permitted to carry this message to the Thebans.
10. Accordingly the fleet weighed anchor and sailed towards Cyprus.

Exercise 133 [B].

REVISION.

1. If we were to keep our fleet strong, Athenians, we should never suffer defeat.
2. Had not the gates been betrayed by the guards we should be holding out still.
3. In this year the Athenians were very confident with regard to the war, as if they were never going to suffer another disaster.
4. If you sail round the island you will find a harbour.
5. The Athenians would not spare you now if you had been defeated, although you have fought in many battles on their behalf.
6. If a man advises the Athenians not to begin a war, he always appears to them a coward.
7. As having only just come from a foreign land, I admire everything that I see in Athens.
8. If you left behind about 400 men they would be sufficient to man the walls.
9. For the most part he finds pleasure in hunting.
10. He happened to have fallen ill, and moreover he was being constantly persecuted by Cleon and his friends.

INDEFINITE CONSTRUCTION

61. In English we make a sentence *indefinite* or *general* by altering the pronoun or conjunction. *E.g.* ‘He said *what he thought*’ is definite; ‘*Whatever he thought* he said’ is indefinite. In Greek this *indefiniteness* affects the mood.

In Primary time the Verb of an *indefinite* clause is in the Subjunctive with $\delta\nu$; in Historic time it is in the Optative without $\delta\nu$. The Negative is always $\mu\bar{\eta}$.

e.g. $\ddot{o}\sigma a \delta\nu \beta o\bar{u}\lambda\eta\tau a i \delta\omega\sigma\omega$.

Whatever he wishes I will give.

$\epsilon i^{\prime} \tau i \mu\bar{\eta} \beta o\bar{u}\lambda o\iota\tau o \epsilon\chi\epsilon i\nu \epsilon\delta\bar{i}\delta o\nu$.

Whatever he did not wish to keep he gave away.

$\epsilon\grave{a}\nu \} \mu\alpha\chi\omega\mu a i, \nu i\kappa\hat{o}$. *If ever I fight, I conquer.*

$\dot{o}\pi\acute{o}\tau e \} \mu\alpha\chioi\mu\eta\tau \epsilon\nu\kappa\omega\nu$. *If ever I fought, I conquered.*

These Indefinite sentences in which $\epsilon\grave{a}\nu$ and ϵi^{\prime} are used in expressing *if ever, whenever, whatever, etc.*, must be carefully distinguished from the Conditional sentences of Class B (pages 113, 114).

Exercise 134 [A].

1. You must follow your general wherever he leads you.
2. If ever they caught a stranger they put him to death.
3. Wherever I went I always found many friends.
4. Do not be afraid, but say whatever you wish.
5. If ever he did not speak the citizens were angry.

6. We will kill the traitors wherever we find them.
7. He ordered the soldiers to follow wherever the guides led them.
8. However these things turn out, you at least are innocent.
9. Whatever sort of message they bring, I shall rejoice to see them.
10. The general commanded his men to attack the enemy wherever they found them.

Exercise 135 [B].

1. Do whatever he orders you.
2. If ever a stranger comes to their land, they receive him kindly.
3. They ordered us to follow him wherever he led us.
4. Whatever hardships they suffered they never lost heart.
5. All whom you find send to me.
6. I know that men collect in large numbers wherever gold is found.
7. To whatever city he went he was admired.
8. Wherever he happened to be he always wrote a letter to me.
9. I shall send home any who seem to be fainthearted.
10. All who were not friends of Hippias were banished.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

62. All clauses introduced by Conjunctions of time have their Verbs in the Indicative,¹ unless they are Indefinite, in which case they follow the Indefinite construction.

The commonest of such Conjunctions are ἐπει', ἐπειδή, when, after, ἐπεὶ τάχιστα, as soon as, ἐξ οὗ, since, after, ἕως, while, as long as, ἕως, μέχρι, until.

'Until' is always indefinite when it refers to the Future.

e.g. ἔμεινα ἕως ἀφίκου. I waited till you came.

μένε ἕως ἀν μάθης. Wait till you hear.

ἡσύχαζον ἕως² οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπίστεν. They waited for the enemy to charge.

EXCEPTION—πρίν.

πρίν takes the Infinitive when the principal Verb is affirmative. Otherwise it follows the above rule.

This corresponds to a difference in the meaning of πρίν. With the Infinitive it can only be translated by *before*. With its other constructions it can be translated by either *before* or *until*.

Notice that, as in Indirect Statement, the subject of the Infinitive with πρίν, if it is the same as the subject of the principal verb, will be in the Nominative; and even if the subject is not expressed, a complement of the Infinitive will be in the Nominative.

¹ For the use of the Aorist in Temporal Clauses, see page 10, rule 8.

² Here 'until' is Future relatively to the time of the principal verb.

e.g. *πρὶν τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπελθεῖν ἀπέφυγον.* *They fled before the enemy charged.*

πρὶν ἀνὴρ γενέσθαι ἐτελεύτησεν. *He died before he became a man.*

οὐκ ἄπειμι πρὶν ἀν σὺ ἔλθης. *I shall not go till you come.*

οὐκ ἀπῆτα πρὶν σὺ ἤλθες. *I did not go until you came.*

N.B.—The above rule for *πρὶν* will be sufficient at present. But

- (1) Sentences not actually negative were sometimes felt to involve negatives, and were then followed by the corresponding construction of *πρὶν*.
- (2) Wherever *before* in English cannot be changed to *until* without altering the sense it would be translated by *πρὶν* with the Infinitive. This will sometimes be the case after negatives.

e.g. *οὐδὲ πρὶν ἥττηθῆναι ἔθάρρει.*

Not even before being beaten had he any courage (much less afterwards).

where *until* would make nonsense.

Exercise 136 [A].

1. When Darius died Artaxerxes was made king.
2. While I was in Persia I learnt many strange things.
3. We shall continue to fight until we take the city.
4. Whenever there is an opportunity attack the enemy.
5. Before departing he gave the Athenians these instructions.
6. They did not dare to wage war on us till they had seized our generals.
7. After the cities had been destroyed, what happened ?
8. He was called our friend till he captured Olynthus.
9. He kept quiet until he should have allies in Greece.
10. They did this till darkness came on.

Exercise 137 [B].

1. Whilst he was still speaking the messengers arrived.
2. Till I come let the treaty remain.
3. I am afraid the citizens will die of hunger before provisions are brought in.
4. When they had settled these matters they departed.
5. Whenever they came together they used to talk nonsense.
6. I dismissed the messengers before they had finished speaking.
7. After eating something they used to get up and proceed on their march.
8. Do not send for the doctor before you are ill.
9. Whilst he was in prison he saw his friends whenever he wished.
10. Since the time when I left Athens I have heard nothing about the war.

Exercise 138 [A].

1. Let us not try to storm the city until reinforcements arrive.
2. They continued to resist to the best of their ability until the general ordered them to throw away their arms.
3. From the time when I first arrived at Athens until you came, I did not cease to associate with Socrates.
4. You ought not to condemn these men before you hear what they have to say.
5. I always honoured him after hearing what great services he had rendered to Greece.
6. I all but killed him before I saw who he was.
7. I was not able to use the money until you wrote to me.
8. Whenever I see that man I wonder at his wisdom.
9. Xenophon ordered the soldiers to bring guides into the camp whenever they could find any.
10. They were all running in different directions until the orator came forward and told them not to be afraid.

Exercise 139 [B].

1. He was not willing to go until they drove him out by force.
2. Whenever he saw a man idling he rebuked him.
3. When the long walls had been built the Athenians ceased to fear the Spartans.
4. They kept the fleet in the harbour until the enemy's ships should sail away.
5. Think before you answer.
6. I shall not attempt the work until I know how to do it.
7. After the allies began to pay money instead of ships to the Athenians they were no longer free.
8. All the time that the city was being besieged, the inhabitants suffered terribly from lack of food.
9. Do not return until they summon you a second time.
10. They joined battle before they were ready.
11. They set out before getting their breakfast.

Exercise 140 [A].

Not long afterwards, when Heracles had nearly reached Mycenae, and was travelling along the sea-shore, Hera sent a great gnat that flew among the cattle, biting them till they all ran away in different directions. Several jumped into the sea, and Herakles jumped in after them and brought back all that he could catch, pulling some by the horns and driving others in front of him ; but the greater number swam out into the open sea and perished before he could overtake them. Then he tried to collect all those who had escaped into the forest, and continued to do this until he was worn out. All that he could recover he brought to Mycenae, and sacrificed them to Hera.

Exercise 141 [A].

If you continue, Athenians, to do as you are doing now, in a short time we shall be unable to withstand Philip either on land or on sea. You spend all the resources of the city on your own pleasure. If instead of that you were to build ships and pay soldiers with the same money, we should no longer have to fear Philip or any other foe. For our ancestors did not squander the resources of the city in time of peace; for which reason, whenever they were involved in a war they were ready. If while at peace they had thought nothing at all of war, they would never have won the glorious victories which you yourselves remember. But before war broke out they had prepared all their ships, their sailors, their supplies, and they would never spend a drachma for their pleasure until all these preparations had been made. Until you imitate them, your affairs will never prosper.

Exercise 142 [B].

After this Alcibiades became exceedingly depressed. Even before he knew that his enemies had resolved to kill him, he used to tell his secretary that the end of his life was at hand¹. Once in a dream he saw himself lying on a funeral pyre and the people standing around to set it on fire. The very night after he had this dream he was awakened by a loud uproar, and saw that about fifty or sixty Persians had come while he was asleep, and were now setting fire to the house. Before they had finished their work, he wrapped a cloak round his head, that he might not be choked by the smoke, and ran out with a sword in his hand. As soon as he got out of the burning house he fell upon the Persians and put them to flight. They dared not fight him hand to hand, but some of them standing at a distance shot at him with arrows until at last he fell. Such was the end of Alcibiades.

¹ 'In a short time he is about to die.'

Exercise 143 [B].

Immediately after they had started they were delayed by adverse winds, and put into the bay of Pylos until the wind should cease. Before starting, Demosthenes had proposed to the Athenians to fortify some place in Laconian territory ; and now that the opportunity had come, he begged the other generals, when they themselves sailed on to Sicily, to leave him in command of even a few hoplites at Pylos. While the whole fleet was still present, the sailors and marines built a small fort ; when the rest departed, Demosthenes, with a few hoplites, was left behind to defend it. As soon as the news reached Sparta, a force was sent to take Pylos ; but the fort was already too strong to be taken easily.

VERBS OF PREVENTING, ETC.

63. Verbs of 'Preventing,' 'Hindering,' 'Forbidding,' 'Denying,' in Greek may take—

(a) The Simple Infinitive.

(b) The Infinitive with $\mu\bar{\eta}$.¹

e.g. $\kappa\omega\lambda\nu\epsilon i\alpha\acute{u}tou\grave{s}\tau o\grave{u}toto\pi oie\grave{n}v$ } *He prevents them*
 $\epsilon\acute{e}rge\acute{u}i\alpha\acute{u}tou\grave{s}\mu\bar{\eta}\tau o\grave{u}toto\pi oie\grave{n}v$ } *from doing this.*

When the verb of *Preventing*, etc. is itself negated (or is a question expecting the answer *no*), the double negative $\mu\bar{\eta}\;o\grave{u}$ is generally used with the Infinitive.

e.g. $o\grave{u}k\epsilon\acute{e}rge\acute{u}i\alpha\acute{u}tou\grave{s}\mu\bar{\eta}\;o\grave{u}\tau o\grave{u}toto\pi oie\grave{n}v$.

He does not prevent them from doing this.

$\tau i\acute{e}m\pi o\delta\grave{a}wv\mu\bar{\eta}\;o\grave{u}k\acute{a}p\theta a\grave{n}e\grave{n}v$;

What is to prevent their being killed?

[Here $\tau i\acute{e}m\pi o\delta\grave{a}wv$ is equivalent to $o\grave{u}d\grave{e}n\acute{e}m\pi o\delta\grave{a}wv$.]

But $\kappa\omega\lambda\nu\omega$ is not usually followed by a negative, even when negated itself.

Exercise 144 [A].

- Nothing will prevent their paying the penalty for their cowardice.
- We cannot prevent his learning what we have done.
- Xenophon tried to prevent his men lingering.
- The Spartans could not prevent Pausanias from going whithersoever he wished.
- What is to prevent our being deceived by Philip again?

¹ Verbs of *Hindering*, *Preventing*, are often followed by the Genitive of the Infinitive—e.g. $\epsilon\acute{e}rge\acute{u}i\alpha\acute{u}tou\grave{s}\tau o\grave{u}v[\mu\bar{\eta}]\tau o\grave{u}toto\pi oie\grave{n}v$.

6. I refrained from questioning him for fear he might deny that he had done this.
7. They were not hindered from hunting wherever they chose.
8. They did their best to prevent the expedition from starting.
9. They did not forbid his conversing with his friends, though he was in prison.
10. There is nothing to delay the citizens from voting at once.
11. I did not deny that I made a mistake.

Exercise 145 [B].

1. Did you not forbid the hoplites to cross the river?
2. This winter interrupted hostilities between the Athenians and Spartans.
3. There is nothing to prevent the exiles returning.
4. They were hindered by fear from accusing Alcibiades.
5. I forbade the people to send you into exile.
6. Let none ever deny that we served our State to the best of our ability.
7. It is to the advantage of all of us to prevent the strangers from suffering harm.
8. If they remain in our city nothing can prevent their voting in the Assembly.
9. The fact of not having a good harbour prevented the Spartans from being strong at sea.
10. Love of their country saved the Greeks from being worsted by the Persians.

**SUMMARY OF THE USES
OF THE NEGATIVES *oὐ* AND *μη̄*.**

64. *oὐ* negatives statements, *μη̄* negatives ideas and sentences that do not involve statements, such as prohibitions, the protasis of a conditional sentence, etc. Therefore

oὐ is used in— *μη̄* is used in—

Statements, direct and indirect (in the Ind., Opt., or Inf.).	All commands, exhortations, and wishes.
---	---

Direct questions that expect the answer 'yes'; and in ordinary indirect questions.	Direct questions that expect the answer 'no'; and in all deliberative questions.
Definite relative and temporal clauses.	All indefinite clauses.

Consecutive clauses with Indicative.	Consecutive clauses with Infinitive.
	Final clauses (with Subj., Opt., or Fut. Ind.).

The Participle when it involves a statement.	All conditions.
	The Participle with Conditional or Generic force. [See below, 65.]
The Infinitive in Indirect Statement. ¹	The Infinitive except in Indirect Statement.

¹ But see page 50 for *μη̄* used after verbs like *hope*, *promise*, *swear*

65. *μή* used generically, i.e. in indicating a class.

μή is used both with the Indicative and with the Participle when we are describing a *class* and not any specific individuals.

e.g. διδάξω σε ἂ μὴ οἶσθα.

I will teach you such things as you do not know.

διδάξω σε [ταῦτα] ἂ οὐκ οἶσθα.

I will teach you these things which you do not know.

The first of these sentences avoids assertion (cf. in Latin *qui* with the *Subjunctive*); the second makes an assertion (Latin *qui* with the *Indicative*).

Compare also—

οὐτοις οἵ οὐδὲν εἰδότες.

These men who know nothing.

οἵ μηδὲν εἰδότες.

Men who know nothing, the ignorant.

66. Double Negatives—

1. The uses of the double negative *μή οὐ* are explained in Rule 42 (page 98) and Rule 64 (page 160).

2. *οὐ μή* with the Aorist Subjunctive (and sometimes with the Future Indicative) expresses an emphatic negative statement.¹

e.g. οὐ μή τοῦτο γένηται (or γενήσεται).

This certainly will not happen.

¹ The use of *οὐ μή* with the 2nd Person of the Future Indicative to express a strong prohibition is entirely poetical.

Exercise 146 [A].

1. The captains were condemned on the ground that they had not tried to save the sailors.
2. They marched with all speed, so that no one was captured by the enemy.
3. They advanced slowly so as not to arrive before morning.
4. Not to speak is often worse than to speak rashly.
5. I was aware that this did not happen in our time.
6. Whenever the general was not present in person the army fared badly.
7. Though he was not a soldier himself he was able to lead an army when it was necessary.
8. When the ships did not return, the citizens began to despair.
9. I could not deny that I myself promised to be present.
10. Did you not hate this man although he had done you no wrong?
11. If they had not arrived at the critical moment the whole army would have been destroyed.
12. They will do you no harm unless you provoke them.
13. Whoever does not obey the laws is punished.
14. Let all who are unwilling to fight remain in the camp.

Exercise 147 [B].

1. Do not suppose that he is not trustworthy.
2. Disobedience is most perilous in an army.
3. Not having strength any more to go on, he rested.
4. Though the army had not been victorious, those who had not been killed in battle got safe home.
5. After this the Athenians no longer forbade his returning home.
6. I am afraid you do not yet believe me.
7. I should not allow you unless you first explained why you wish to take vengeance on him.
8. It is (the mark) of a shameless man not to love his father.
9. You are not skilled in this art, are you ?
10. You shall certainly suffer nothing so far as I am concerned.
11. He turned away without answering anything, as if he had not heard clearly what I said.
12. He made many mistakes on account of his never having been in command of an army before.
13. Those who do not speak well are not honoured at Athens.
14. Whatever you do not know now you will soon learn.

Exercise 148 [A].**REVISION.**

There was nothing now to save¹ the whole force from destruction. The fact that Nicias had prevented the army from setting out, while there was still hope of escape, had given fresh confidence to the enemy and filled the Greek soldiers with rage and despair.² At this crisis³ Nicias did his best to cheer and encourage the men, though he was well aware that no one was to blame but himself. He implored them not to despair, and asserted that for his own part he did not believe that the Syracusans could prevent their reaching the coast even if they endured many hardships on the march. But in reality he hardly hoped to persuade any one by such words; and though all were ready to do whatever he ordered, there probably was not a man who did not know that their case was hopeless.

¹ Use *εμποδών*.

² Say ‘knowing that Nicias . . . , the enemy were the more confident and the Greeks more enraged, etc.’

³ ‘The danger being so great.’

Exercise 149 [A].

REVISION.

In later times the story was told that Themistocles, after undergoing many difficulties and dangers, came to Ephesus, and from this place wrote as follows to the king: ‘I, an Athenian, have come to thee--the man who did most harm to the Persians while I was compelled to resist thy father, but who also did him most good by withholding the Greeks from destroying the bridge over the Hellespont while he was journeying from Attica to Asia. Never would I have injured him, willingly at least; and now I am here, able to do thee much good, but persecuted by the Greeks on account of my goodwill to thee. I pray thee therefore to prevent thy subjects from harming me, and to suffer me to remain here until I am able to tell thee more clearly in what way thou mayest best take vengeance on thine enemies.’ After seeing the king he continued to live near the coast, but did nothing to fulfil his promise, until at length he died a voluntary death so as not to be convicted of having made a vain boast.

Exercise 150 [B].**REVISION.**

The Senate had previously decided not to release for ransom, as was usual, the prisoners taken by Phanosthenes, but to put them to death, on the ground that they were not enemies, but had rebelled against their mother city ; for they came from Thurii, an Athenian colony. But this decree could not be carried out unless ratified by the Assembly. When, therefore, the Assembly was held, an orator named Eumedes urged the people to show the Thurians no pity.¹ ‘When the Melians revolted, Athenians, you put all their men to death, though they were not your kinsmen, nor even your allies. What shall prevent you from inflicting the same punishment upon the Thurians, who have committed a far worse crime ?’

¹ Spare.

Exercise 151 [B].**REVISION.**

The Assembly was prevented from voting immediately by a certain citizen who reminded them that it was not according to the law to condemn even enemies unheard.¹ The prisoners were therefore brought in, and among them Dorieus of Rhodes, a man of magnificent stature², who was known throughout Greece especially as having been thrice victorious in the paneratium at Olympia. And as this man came forward the people could not refrain from applauding him; and not allowing Eumedes to say another word, they voted that Dorieus should not be restrained from going whithersoever he wished, and, if he did not wish to depart, that he might remain at Athens as the guest of the people. Had Dorieus not been present, nothing would have saved the prisoners from being put to death the same day.

¹ 'Not having defended themselves' (*ἀπολογέομαι*).

² Say *in stature* (accus. of respect).

SUBJUNCTIVE AND OPTATIVE

SUMMARY OF USES

Subjunctive.

Optative.

INDEPENDENT.

(a) Exhortations (1st Person). (a) Wishes referring to the future.

(b) Prohibitions (2nd Person Aorist). (b) To make a modified statement or command—the sentence resembling the Apodosis of Conditionals *B* (2). *ἴσως ἀν τις εἴποι . . . , Perhaps some one might say . . .*

(c) Deliberative questions.

DEPENDENT.

(a) Final sentences after Primary or Historic¹ tense. (a) Final sentences after Historic tense.

(b) With verbs of fearing after Primary or Historic¹ tense. (b) With verbs of fearing after Historic tense.

(c) Conditional sentences with *εάν* [Class *B* (1)]. (c) Conditional sentences with *εἰ* in Protasis and *ἀν* in Apodosis [Class *B* (2)].

(d) Indefinite Relative and Temporal sentences with *ἀν* (Primary and sometimes Historic¹). (d) Indefinite Relative and Temporal sentences (Historic).

(e) Indirect Statements after Historic tense.

(f) Indirect Questions after Historic tense.

¹ In (a), (b), (d) the Subjunctive is frequently used instead of the Optative by the Graphic Construction, and in (c) where the Conditional sentence is in *Oratio Obliqua*.

Similarly in (e) and (f) the Indicative is frequently used instead of the Optative.

Exercise 152 [A].

1. When are we to start ?
2. We should see better there.
3. I was afraid they would rob us of our money.
4. Choose men to command this expedition.
5. We ascertained what they accused him of.
6. Do not leave this gate unguarded.
7. Whenever he is wronged, he takes vengeance on the man who has wronged him.
8. May you meet with success, if you march with Cyrus.
9. He would show himself more prudent, if he stayed at home.
10. Let us make haste, if we wish to bring this news before others.

Exercise 153 [B].

1. Why he does not choose an experienced man to finish the work, I cannot understand.
2. He called to him all whom he knew to be trustworthy.
3. Do you wish me to be ready to-day ?
4. The army was drawn up in this manner to repulse cavalry.
5. He asked whether the general would arrive that day.
6. May you accomplish your task easily !
7. Do not go away without accomplishing anything.
8. I should be ashamed, judges, if I gained your pity by weeping.
9. If ever I deserve punishment, I am willing to endure it.
10. Whatever crimes he committed, he was never condemned.

Exercise 154 [A].

When Laodamas, King of Thebes, heard that the Epigoni were coming to avenge their fathers, he armed the citizens and marched out to meet them, and a battle took place¹ in front of the city gates. The Epigoni fought the more bravely because they remembered their fathers; and though the Thebans held their ground steadily at first, they lost heart after their king had been slain by Alcmaeon, and fled for refuge to the city. The Epigoni encamped before Thebes, saying that they would not raise the siege until they had taken the city; and meanwhile the Thebans held counsel as to how they could best save themselves. At last, at the advice of the prophet Tiresias, they resolved to leave the city unobserved by the enemy, taking with them all the possessions they could carry. They accomplished this while the Epigoni were feasting and rejoicing after the battle, and² the whole city was deserted before any of the enemy perceived what was happening.

¹ Say ‘they fought.’

² Use *ωστε* with Indicative.

Exercise 155 [B].

They determined to retreat, fearing that, if they marched further into the desert, they would suffer even worse from want of food. Three thousand had been slain in the battle, but far more perished on the return march. So hard pressed were they that they left behind the sick and the baggage in a certain town which had a small garrison. These were besieged the whole winter, and were only rescued in the following year, when, being scarcely able to defend themselves longer, they were on the point of surrendering. Xerxes equipped another expedition, but before he set out ambassadors arrived from the Scythians to make peace. They agreed to give hostages and not to invade Persian territory, but to become allies of the Persians. Thus the war ended.

Exercise 156 [A].

Nicias had drawn up the Athenians on the right wing and the Sicilian allies on the left, where, on account of the hill, they were not likely to share in the contest ; for he greatly feared that if the Athenians were worsted the Sicilians would desert to the enemy. But before the battle began he addressed the Athenians as follows :—‘ Men of Athens, you perceive for yourselves in what danger we lie, and I know that I myself am responsible for it. But let all of you recall to mind the great deeds of our ancestors who put to flight the Persians at Marathon. Would that Miltiades were here to lead us to-day ! But so far as I am able I shall do what becomes a general, and I believe the gods will be on our side.’

Exercise 157 [B].

What would have happened if Alexander, when at the height of his power, had invaded Italy? According to a Roman writer the Romans would have been able to get the upper hand at last, even if they had lost some battles. They would at any rate have been fighting at home, with ample provisions and allies to help them, whereas Alexander, if he had lost many men, would have been compelled to wait a long time before receiving reinforcements. Moreover the Romans had shown¹ in their wars against Pyrrhus and Hannibal that in spite of frequent defeats² they never lost heart; and though they had no general competent to defeat Alexander in a battle, yet their soldiers were the best in the world, inasmuch as they were all free citizens fighting for their own lives and liberty.

¹ use str. aor. pass. of *φαίνομαι*.

² though often conquered.

WISHES IN PRESENT AND PAST TIME

68. I. Wishes for the Future are always expressed by the Optative. [p. 78].

II. Wishes for the Present and Past (being necessarily unfulfilled) are expressed by $\epsilon\theta\epsilon$, $\epsilon\iota\gamma\alpha\rho$ with the Past tenses of the Indicative, like the unfulfilled conditions of Class A (2) [p. 112]. The Imperfect is used for Present time or Past continuous time, the Aorist for Past 'momentary' time.

But they may also be expressed by $\ddot{\omega}\phi\epsilon\lambda\omega\nu$, -es, -e, etc. (with or without $\epsilon\theta\epsilon$, $\epsilon\iota\gamma\alpha\rho$) followed by the Infinitive.

$\ddot{\omega}\phi\epsilon\lambda\omega\nu$ = 'ought,' is an Aorist of $\dot{\omega}\phi\epsilon\iota\lambda\omega$, *to owe*.

In all wishes the Negative is $\mu\bar{n}$.

e.g. $\epsilon\iota\gamma\alpha\rho\; a\bar{u}t\bar{o}\bar{u}\bar{s}\;\epsilon\bar{i}\delta\bar{e}s$.

O if you had seen them! O that you had seen them!

$\epsilon\iota\gamma\alpha\rho\; \tau\bar{o}\sigma\bar{a}\bar{u}\bar{t}\bar{\eta}\nu\; \delta\bar{u}\bar{n}\bar{a}\bar{m}\bar{i}\bar{\nu}\;\epsilon\bar{i}\chi\bar{o}\bar{\nu}$.

Would that I had so great power.¹

Or the same sentences may be expressed by

[$\epsilon\bar{i}\theta'$] $\ddot{\omega}\phi\epsilon\lambda\bar{e}\bar{s}\;\mu\epsilon\;i\bar{\delta}\bar{e}\bar{i}\bar{n}$.²

[$\epsilon\iota\gamma\alpha\rho$] $\ddot{\omega}\phi\epsilon\lambda\omega\nu\; \tau\bar{o}\sigma\bar{a}\bar{u}\bar{t}\bar{\eta}\nu\; \delta\bar{u}\bar{n}\bar{a}\bar{m}\bar{i}\bar{\nu}\;\dot{\epsilon}\bar{\chi}\bar{e}\bar{i}\bar{\nu}$.

¹ Or, *Would that I had been in possession of such power (in the past).*

² Literally, *You ought to have seen me.*

Exercise 158 [A].

1. Would that I had died before seeing our city subdued !
2. May you never suffer such evils as you have inflicted on others !
3. Would that Miltiades were still our general !
4. Soldiers, may you reap the fruits of victory !
5. O that I had never been elected general !
6. Would that we might reach the harbour before the storm falls upon us !
7. The Athenians should never have sent an expedition against Syracuse.
8. May you never meet the man who betrayed your father !
9. Would that we had reached the city first !
10. Demosthenes should still have been alive to encourage us in the war.

Exercise 159 [B].

1. Would that I had lived in the time of Pericles !
2. Would that Jason and his companions had never set out !
3. O that you may be successful in this contest !
4. Would that Miltiades were here to lead us !
5. O that I had perished on that day !
6. Never may you learn who you are !
7. Would that I had died for thee, my son !
8. Would that we Greeks were marching on Susa and not on Thebes !
9. How I would that the son were like his father !
10. Heaven grant we may never behold such deeds done in Athens.

**CONDITIONAL SENTENCES
IN ORATIO OBLIQUA**

69. 1. **The Protasis** follows the rule for subordinate clauses in Oratio Obliqua already given on p. 84. If the Subjunctive of the Direct becomes Optative, of course *εάν* is changed to *εἰ*.

2. The Apodosis.

- (a) If the construction with *ὅτι* or *ὡς* be used, the rule on p. 48 is followed.
- (b) If the Infinitive (or Participle) construction be used, this will be in the same tense as the Indicative or Optative of the Direct speech.¹

Whether (a) or (b) be used, the particle *ἄν*, if used in the Direct speech, must be retained in the Indirect.

EXAMPLES.

I. Using the Infinitive construction.

A. 1. εἰ ἐβρόντησε, καὶ ηστραψεν.

ἔφη, εἰ ἐβρόντησε, καὶ ἀστράψαι.

He said that if it (had) thundered it (had) also lightened.

A. 2. εἰ ἤμαρτον, ἀπέθανον ἄν.

ἔφη, εἰ ἤμαρτεν ἀποθανεῖν ἄν.

He said that if he had made a mistake he would have been put to death.

¹ Including the Imperfect with the Present.

B. 1. $\epsilon\acute{i}\ \zeta\eta\tau\acute{h}\sigma\epsilon\iota s$ }
 ἐὰν $\zeta\eta\tau\acute{h}\sigma\eta\varsigma$ } εὐρήσεις.

ἔφη αὐτὸν { $\epsilon\acute{i}\ \zeta\eta\tau\acute{h}\sigma\iota\varsigma$ }
 ἐὰν $\zeta\eta\tau\acute{h}\sigma\eta\varsigma$ } εὐρήσειν.

He said that if he sought he would find.

B. 2. $\epsilon\acute{i}\ \zeta\eta\tau\acute{h}\iota\varsigma\eta s$, εῦροις ἄν.

ἔφη αὐτὸν $\epsilon\acute{i}\ \zeta\eta\tau\acute{h}\iota\varsigma\eta$ εὐρεῖν ἄν.

He said that if he sought he would find.

II. Using the ὅτι construction.

A. 1. $\epsilon\bar{i}\pi\epsilon\nu\ \ddot{\text{o}}\tau i\ \epsilon\acute{i}\ \dot{\epsilon}\beta\varrho\acute{o}\nu\tau\eta\sigma\epsilon\ kai\ \{\ddot{\eta}\sigma\tau\varrho\alpha\psi\epsilon\nu.$ }
 ἀστράψειε.

A. 2. $\epsilon\bar{i}\pi\epsilon\nu\ \ddot{\text{o}}\tau i\ \epsilon\acute{i}\ \dot{\eta}\mu\alpha\pi\tau\epsilon\nu\ \dot{\alpha}\pi\acute{e}\theta\alpha\eta\epsilon\nu\ \ddot{\alpha}\nu.$

B. 1. $\epsilon\bar{i}\pi\epsilon\nu\ \ddot{\text{o}}\tau i\ \{\epsilon\acute{i}\ \zeta\eta\tau\acute{h}\iota\varsigma\eta\}$ εὐρήσοι.
 }
 ἐὰν $\zeta\eta\tau\acute{h}\sigma\eta\varsigma$ } εὐρήσει.

B. 2. $\epsilon\bar{i}\pi\epsilon\nu\ \ddot{\text{o}}\tau i\ \epsilon\acute{i}\ \zeta\eta\tau\acute{h}\iota\varsigma\eta\ \epsilon\bar{u}\rho\eta i\ \ddot{\alpha}\nu.$

Exercise 160 [A].

1. I am sure that if we had drawn up the army more skillfully we should have won the battle.
2. He promised that he would not offend again if they dismissed him.
3. He said that if a man is ignorant he is happy.
4. He promised to meet me if I told him when I should arrive.
5. They supposed that if they gave up the prisoners the Spartans would restore Amphipolis.
6. I hoped to have had my share in this contest if I had not been prevented from being present.
7. They replied that they would have obeyed the king if they were his subjects.
8. The general defended himself by saying that if reinforcements had come, as the Athenians had promised, he would not have surrendered the town.
9. I know Peisistratus would not allow these things if he were tyrant of Athens.
10. They thought that if Cleon captured the Spartans in Sphacteria he would benefit Athens more than Nicias.

Exercise 161 [B].

1. I believe we should have conquered if we had had another general.
2. They promised to return if the war ceased.
3. I was afraid they would be badly treated if they became subject to the Persians.
4. I believe he would still have been alive if he had not suffered such misfortunes.
5. It was plain that they would perish if we did not go to their help.
6. They replied that they would have given back the money if there had been any need.
7. I am sure they could have saved the city if they had arrived in time.
- * 8. It was evident that they intended to attack us if we crossed the river.
9. We should have attacked them at once if they had come down from the mountain.
10. They swore to reduce the city by famine if they were not able to take it by force.

Exercise 162 [A].

The law ordains, Athenians, that if any person has injured the people of Athens, he shall in the first place be imprisoned and tried by the people; and then if he be convicted he shall be put to death and his goods shall be confiscated. Why, then, are you in such vehement haste? Do you suppose that if you put off voting till to-morrow this law will be previously annulled? Ought you not rather to fear that, if by any chance in your anger you were to put an innocent man to death, you would repent too late? Would that you, Athenians, could not remember any such deeds done in the past! I think indeed that you would do more justly if you honoured these men with crowns; but at least if you delay your decision till to-morrow, it will still be possible for you to put the generals to death in whatever way you please.

Exercise 163 [A].

Cleon declared that if only the Athenians made him general he would capture Sphacteria in twenty days, and bring the Spartans as prisoners to Athens. He asserted that if the generals who were then in command had endeavoured to serve the interests of the state to the best of their ability, the island would have been captured long before. ‘Send me,’ he said, ‘and you will never repent it.’ To many it seemed that he had spoken without really wishing to be taken at his word.¹ But however that may be, the Athenian people, who were greatly dissatisfied with the present condition of affairs, elected him general at once. If they had reflected longer they would probably not have done this; but at any rate Cleon performed his promise, and returned to Athens victorious.

¹ to persuade them.

Exercise 164 [B].

The soldiers, who for a long time had evidently been discontented, at length declared that they would no longer obey their officers unless they were informed where they were going. They said that they would never have started if the general had not promised to tell them this as soon as they passed their own frontiers. Thereupon the general replied that what they said was true, but that it was not now expedient for them to learn all his plans, lest they should by some chance be divulged to the enemy. If they trusted him they would not repent it. Moreover, he pointed out how foolish they would be if they gave up their hopes of fame and riches because they were unwilling to wait until he thought good to explain everything to them.

Exercise 165 [B].

Xenophon in answer said, ‘Callias, if Tissaphernes so pleased, Clearchus and all the generals would be seized and slain before we could go to their help.’ While he was yet speaking they heard an outcry and disturbance in the camp, and rushing out to ascertain the cause, they met a certain Arcadian captain badly wounded, who, as he ran towards them, cried out that Clearchus was dead and the other generals had been seized. Immediately the Greeks seized their arms, fearing that the whole Persian army would be upon them. But the king was aware that the Greek hoplites were much better than his own horsemen, and had resolved not to employ force if he could effect anything by stratagem.

SUMMARY OF THE USES OF THE INFINITIVE

70. I. With the Article.—When declined with the Article the Infinitive may be treated exactly as a Noun, may stand as the subject or object of a sentence, and may be governed by Prepositions. But as being still a verb it may also govern an object and have a subject, ordinarily in the Accusative, but in the Nominative if it is the same as the subject of the Principal verb. The Negative is always *μή*.

e.g. ἐπέσχον τὸ τοῦς Ἀθηναῖος ἐπιχειρεῖν.

They put off attacking the Athenians.

ἐπαύσαντο { τοῦ μάχεσθαι.
τῆς μάχης. }

They ceased fighting.

περὶ τοῦ τιμωρεῖσθαι Φίλιππον.

With regard to punishing Philip.

διὰ τὸ ξένος εἶναι οὐκ ἡδικιόθη.

On account of his being a stranger he was not harmed.

ἐκ τοῦ μὴ δημηγορεῖν ἐνίους.

In consequence of some men's not speaking in public.

For the use of this Infinitive after *prevent*, etc., see note p. 160.

The Present and Aorist of the Infinitive with the Article do not retain any difference of time, but the difference between 'continued' and 'momentary' action as explained in Rule 40, p. 92.

II. Without the Article.

1. In Indirect Statement. See p. 50.

In this use of the Infinitive (and in this only) all the tenses retain their proper *time* distinctions as in the Indicative. It is only in this use that the negative is *οὐ*.

2. In Indirect Command. See p. 82.

3. After verbs of Preventing, etc. See p. 160.

4. In Consecutives with *ὅστε*. See p. 100.

5. After *πρίν*. See p. 150.

6. The Prolate and Object Infinitives are as widely extended in Greek as in English; and in the classes of verbs which take these Infinitives the two languages almost exactly correspond. *E.g.* Besides those that are included in the above classes such verbs as *compel, teach, cause, attempt*, etc.

7. So also after Adjectives expressing *ability, fitness, etc.*

e.g. δεινὸς λέγειν, skilled in speaking.

ἄξιος τιμᾶσθαι, worthy to be honoured.

8. An Infinitive of Purpose is possible in Greek after words like *choose and appoint, give and take, send and bring*.

e.g. δέκα τῶν νεῶν προῦπεμψαν κηρῦξαι, etc.

They sent ten of the ships to proclaim, etc.

τὴν πόλιν φυλάττειν αὐτοῖς παρέδωκαν.

They delivered the city to them to guard.

Exercise 166 [A].

1. We were all indignant at these things being concealed.
2. Ambassadors were sent to forbid the building of the walls.
3. No one was now able to prevent Philip from reducing Olynthus.
4. Though I did not know him myself, I have always heard that he was a most clever speaker.
5. I am not in a position to speak because I was not present myself.
6. He does not deny that he took part in the war.
7. We prevented him from returning before the end of the war.
8. They forbade him to come though he was ready to help them.
9. I will not deny that I did not arrive in time.
10. We were greatly annoyed at their not sending for us before.
11. We gave them these ships to use as they wished.
12. They promised to give back the hostages on condition that the Thebans did not break the truce.

Exercise 167 [B].

1. They entrusted to us these children to bring up.
2. We were allowed to come back from exile on condition that we should take no part in politics.
3. He was too generous a man to take vengeance on his enemy.
4. He was banished from Athens on account of his being himself convicted of treachery.
5. They handed over the city to the mercenaries to guard.
6. He never tried to prevent his son from doing whatever he wished.
7. So noble did the captive general appear that no one spoke or applauded as he rode through the city.
8. A great storm arose and caused all the ships to seek • refuge in the harbour.
9. No one ever denied that we ought not to have given up the city.
10. The Ephors met to discuss the question of expelling Alcibiades from their country.
11. The general issued an order that the soldiers must not scatter to seek provisions.
12. I consider that Cleon is not worthy to be appointed general.

Exercise 168 [A].**REVISION.**

Meanwhile the king, having taken up his position, as has been said, in the centre, and seeing no one coming against him, advanced as if to attack the Greeks on their flank. Cyrus, seeing this, charged at full speed with his six hundred, and broke the line in front of the king. The troopers were scattered in the ardour of pursuit¹, and Cyrus was left alone with a handful of men. Even so all would have been well, if he had not suddenly caught sight of his brother. But on perceiving him in the throng, he cried out, ‘There is the man!’ and advanced furiously against him. The two brothers engaged at once in a hand-to-hand struggle. But Cyrus and his followers were too few to be victorious. Before long they were hurled to the ground, and Cyrus himself with eight others was slain.

¹ pursuing with great eagerness.

Exercise 169 [B].

REVISION.

In the spring this vast army began its march from Susa, with Xerxes himself in command. At first they advanced slowly; but when the king perceived that the Scythians constantly retreated before him he determined to send forward the cavalry as fast as possible, with orders not to join battle with the enemy but to check their retreat in every way. On the third day, however, this force was caught in an ambush and cut to pieces¹ by the enemy. Encouraged by this success the barbarians waited for Xerxes, where he had to cross a river. On their arrival the Persians encamped one night in the presence of the enemy, but on the next day arrayed their line of battle, the archers being stationed on the right, all the other light-armed troops on the left, and the hoplites occupying the centre. They repelled frequent charges of the enemy, but could not follow them when they retired, so that they gained neither glory nor booty by the battle.

¹ destroyed.

Exercise 170 [A].**REVISION.**

If our ancestors, Athenians, when at war with the Persians, had done as you are doing now, Greece would never have become free, and we should be the subjects of some satrap. The story is told that, when the king sent to demand earth and water from the Athenians, the heralds were thrown into a well. For the Athenians in those days preferred to fight the Persians before negotiating with them. But you are not willing to do anything in defence of Athens till Philip comes to your very gates. Do not indeed believe Aeschines and his friends, who say that Philip is your friend? What kind of a friend, forsooth, is he? Have you not before now convicted him of trying to deceive you, especially as regards Amphipolis? And if now you make an agreement with him that he shall hand over Olynthus to you, all Greece will laugh you to scorn—nay, in a short time you will be a laughing-stock to yourselves.

Exercise 171 [B].**REVISION.**

It would be reasonable, Athenians, if you were to despatch against Philip all the forces of the city. But if you decide not to do this,—since you regard it, I believe, as too great a burden to serve abroad yourselves—at least attach a sufficient body of Athenians to whatever force of mercenaries you think enough for the war; and secondly, let the whole force spend both winter and summer near the Macedonian coast, that it may be ready to go to the rescue wherever Philip makes an attack. And now dismiss these matters for the moment, and let me speak to you, Athenians, words that are unpleasant perhaps, but very necessary in this crisis. You yourselves often show how proud you are of your ancestors' deeds; for whenever one speaks of them even briefly, you applaud so that the sailors in the Piraeus hear the noise. But reflect and ask one another how it was that your ancestors became famed throughout the world. It was by doing things of which you do nothing. They risked their homes for Greece—you will not risk the price of your theatre-tickets¹. They went to the ends of the world themselves—you sit slothfully at home and send hired barbarians to do your work. To what a depth of shame has the city of Themistocles fallen!

¹ τὸ θεωρεῖν.

Exercise 172 [A]**REVISION.**

It became now almost evident that the city would not be taken by direct assault. It was therefore resolved to reduce it by famine. Still in the course of the winter the immense army outside the walls were as great sufferers as the population within. The soldiers fell in great numbers owing to the intense¹ cold and insufficient food. For, as usual in such sieges², these deaths far outnumbered those inflicted by the enemy's hand. The sufferings inside the city increased daily³, the people receiving only enough food to support life. With the approach of spring there was danger that supplies would be entirely cut off; and they scarcely hoped the general would be able to organise a fleet before the city fell.

Exercise 173 [B].**REVISION.**

The Athenians now had very few ships left. These they drew up on the shore, and having made a small fort intended to defend themselves as brave men should. But few though they were, and badly armed and in want of food, the enemy shrank from attacking them, knowing the extraordinary courage which the Athenians always showed in adversity. Indeed they promised through a herald to make terms on condition the Athenians would immediately evacuate the island. But they replied that they could not retire without orders from home.

¹ terrible.² as often befalls besiegers.³ Make 'those within the city' the subject.

Exercise 174 [A].**REVISION.**

The king's army¹ was encamped for 120 days near Bristol¹; for there more than anywhere else Fairfax¹ had received assistance. At first they bivouacked on the heights above the town, expecting to take it with one assault. But after they had thrice attempted to enter it at a point where, even at a distance, they perceived the wall to be weak, and had each time been prevented by the resolute resistance of the citizens², they were obliged to make a camp in the low and marshy ground by the harbour, and wait until the citizens should be brought to terms by famine. To hasten this, they began to build a single wall round the city, but they could not guard it properly on the side of the river; and in consequence merchant ships sailed boldly into the harbour, and brought provisions for the garrison.

¹ Let the army be that of Nicias before Syracuse, and use *Hermocrates* for Fairfax.

² by the citizens resolutely resisting.

Exercise 175 [B].**REVISION.**

This disaster in Egypt, by which more than 10,000 Athenians had perished, occasioned a great outburst of grief in the city¹; for there was scarcely a single family which had not a son or a brother slain². It would not have been strange if the citizens had despaired of their Egyptian schemes³. Yet on the very day which followed the receipt of the news, it was carried in the Assembly that a new expedition should be fitted out. But this expedition never landed in Egypt. For Cimon, who was placed in command, lingered a long time round Cyprus in order to defend the Greek cities there against the Phoenician fleet. On the day of the battle he was too ill to go on board, but he addressed the men before they embarked. He died in a manner worthy of the son of Miltiades, at the very moment when his victorious fleet put back to the shore.

¹ brought the utmost grief upon the city.

² from which either a son or a brother had not perished.

³ Use *πράγματα*.

SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

N.B.—In the following Vocabularies genders are given (except where the meaning makes it unnecessary) and the genitives of all nouns except regular nouns of the first and second Declensions. Principal Parts of Irregular Verbs are given in the Appendix, p. 223.

Exercise 1.

Greece, Ἑλλάς, -άδος, *f.*
 Greeks, Ἑλλῆνες
 always, ἀεί
 brave, ἀνδρεῖος; *adv.* ἀνδρείως
 courage, ἀνδρεία, *f.*
 formerly, πάλαι
 free, ἐλεύθερος
 freedom, ἐλευθερία, *f.*
 free (*v.*), ἐλευθερώ
 honour, τιμάω
 hope, ἐλπίς, -ίδος, *f.*
 give, δίδωμι
 true, ἀληθής, -ής
 often, πολλάκις
 strange, δεινός
 speak, λέγω
 difficult, χαλεπός
 difficulties, τὰ χαλεπά
 think, νομίζω
 base, αἰσχρός
 rich, πλούσιος
 many, πολλοί (*πολύς, πολλή, πολύ*)
 have, ἔχω
 harin, βλάπτω, *Acc.*
 men of the present day, οἱ νῦν
 here, ἐνθάδε
 believe, obey, πείθομαι, *Dat.*
 lie, φεύδομαι
 friend, φίλος

Exercise 2.

wise, σοφός
 wisdom, σοφία, *f.*
 be willing, wish, θέλω, βούλομαι
 well, εὖ
 ship, ναῦς, νεώς, *f.*
 safe, ἀσφαλής, -ής
 harbour, λιμήν, -ένος, *m.*
 admire, wonder at, θαυμάζω
 become, γίγνομαι
 slave, δοῦλος, -ου
 slavery, δουλεία, *f.*
 the men of old, οἱ πάλαι
 barbarian, βάρβαρος

Exercise 3.

soldier, στρατιώτης, -ου
 army, στράτευμα, -ατος, *n.*; στρα-
 τός, *m.*
 Athenian, Ἀθηναῖος
 die, ἀποθηγῆσκω
 city, πόλις, -εως, *f.*; δότυ, -εως, *n.*
 sight, μάχομαι
 fly, φεύγω
 escape, ἐκφεύγω
 lie, φεύδομαι
 come, ἔρχομαι
 stand, ἔστηκα (Perf. of ἔστημι)
 street, ὁδός, -οῦ, *f.*

herald, κῆρυξ, -υκος
 loud, μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα
 voice, φωνή, f.
 noble, ἀγαθός, γενναῖος
 destroy, ἀπόλλυμι (In Middle—
 perish)
 wall, τείχος, -ους, n.
 make, ποιέω
 just, lately, δρτι
 bring, φέρω
 out, ἐκφέρω
 be sick, νοσέω
 in, ἐν, Dat.
 into, εἰς, Acc.
 from, ἀπό, ἐκ, Gen.
 woman, wife, γυνή, -αικός
 graceful, χαρέις, -εσσα, -εν
 hand, χείρ, -ός, f.
 send, πέμπω
 back, ἀποπέμπω

Exercise 4.

for, on behalf of, ὑπέρ, Gen.
 worthy, ἄξιος
 king, βασιλεύς, -έως, m.
 lion, λέων, -οντος, m.
 tooth, δόδοντος, -όντος, m.
 sharp, ὁξύς, -εῖα, -ύ
 father, πατέρ, -τρός
 son, υἱός
 citizen, πολίτης, -οντος.
 money, χρήματα, -ων, n. *pl.*
 general, στρατηγός, m.
 country, native land, πατρίς, -ίδος,
 f.

Exercise 5.

hero, ἥρως, -ως, m.
 poor, πένης, -ητος
 easy, βέδιος
 battle, μάχη, f.

leader, ἡγεμών, -όνος, m.
 destroy, διαφθείρω, ἀπόλλυμι
 save, σῶζω
 rather than, μᾶλλον ἢ
 orator, ρήτωρ, -ορος, m.

Exercise 6.

conquer, νικάω
 strong, ἰσχυρός
 wild beast, θηρίον, n.
 victory, νίκη, f.
 enemy, πολέμιος, or *pl.* πολέμιοι
 sail, πλέω
 never, οὐδέποτε
 arrive, ἀφικνέομαι
 kill, ἀποκτείνω
 betray, προδίδωμι
 wrong, κακός

Exercise 7.

living creature, ζῶον, n.
 beautiful, καλός
 small, μικρός
 tree, δένδρον, n.
 flower, κανθός, -ους, n.
 grow, ανθάνομαι
 island, νῆσος, -ον, f.
 be killed, ἀποθνήσκω
 by (of agent), ὑπό, Gen.
 gold, χρυσός, m.
 silver, ἀργυρός, m.
 market, ἀγορά, f.
 missile, dart, βέλος, -ους, n.
 throw, shoot, βάλλω
 friend, φίλος, m.
 present, gift, δῶρον, n.
 child, τέκνον, n.
 dear, φίλος
 corn, σῖτος, m.
 wine, οἶνος, m.
 useful, χρήσιμος

Nicias, Νικίας, -ου

Demosthenes, Δημοσθένης, -ους

Callias, Καλλίας, -ου

Exercise 8.

take, αἴρεω

Persian, Πέρσης, -ου

brother, ἀδελφός, -ου

Exercise 9.

remain, μένω

dead, I am dead, τέθνηκα

day, ἡμέρα, *f.*

all, πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν

Exercise 10.

attack, ἐπιτίθεμαι, *Dat.*, προσ-

βάλλω, *Dat.* [The latter may
be used in the Passive]

march, πορεύομαι [Aorist, ἐπο-
ρεύθην]

be in distress, difficulties, ἀπορέω

order, command, κελεύω

camp, στρατόπεδον, *n.*

await, δέχομαι

cross, διαβαίνω

river, ποταμός, *m.*

hear, ἀκούω, *Gen.* of person, *Acc.*
of thing heard

see, δράω

enter, εἰσειμι εἰς, *Acc.*

ask (a question), ἔρωτάω

answer, ἀποκρίνομαι

town, δῆστυ, -εως, *n.*

catch, καταλαμβάνω

Exercise 11.

sail out of, ἐκπλέω ἐκ, *Gen.*

encamp, στρατοπεδεύομαι

to, towards, πρός, *Acc.*

take, λαμβάνω, αἴρεω; to be taken,
also ἀλίσκομαι

Exercise 12.

choose, αἱρέομαι

sell, ἀποδίδομαι

house, οἶκος, *m.*, οἰκία, *f.*

Aleibiades, Ἀλκιβιάδης, -ου

win, φέρομαι

prize, ἀδλον, *n.*

finish (transitive), put an end to,
παύω

finish (intransitive), desist from,
cease from, παύομαι, *Gen.*

Socrates, Σωκράτης, -ους

teach, διδάσκω

sum, ἥλιος, *m.*

appear, φαίνομαι [Aorist, ἐφάνην]
show, ἀποδείκνυμι

resist, ἀμύνομαι

set free, λύω

ransom, λύομαι

capture, αἴρεω

Exercise 13.

storm, χαιμών, -ῶνος, *m.*

quickly, ταχέως

sailor, ναύτης, -ου, *m.*

fish, ἰχθύς, -ός, *m.*

defend, ἀμύνομαι, *Dat.* of person
defended, *Acc.* of person against
whom the defence is made

games, ἄγῶνες (*pl.* of ἄγων contest),
m.

keep safe, σώζομαι

give back, ἀποδίδωμι

judge, κριτής, -οῦ, *m.*

Exercise 14.

book, βιβλος, -ου, *f.*

bury, θάπτω

Exercise 15.

increase (transitive), αὐξάνω

country, χώρα, *f.*

bring back, κομίζομαι.
beat (defeat), νικάω

Exercise 16.

besiege, πολιορκέω
with all his forces, πανστρατίᾳ
stone, λίθος, *m.*
when, ἐπει
wound, τραυματίζω
already, ἂδη
open, ἀνοίγνυμι
gate, πύλη, *f.*
skill, τέχνη, *f.*
bridge, γέφυρα, *f.*
messenger, ἀγγελος, *m.*
send, πέμπω

Exercise 17.

pelt, βάλλω
traitor, προδότης, -ου, *m.*
arrow, τόξευμα, -ατος, *n.*
break, λύω
great, μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα

Exercise 18.

Athens, Ἀθήναι, *f. pl.*
to Athens, Ἀθήναῖς
from Athens, Ἀθήνηθεν
at Athens, Ἀθήνησι
Hellespont, Ἐλλήσποντος, *m.*
home, homewards, οἴκαδε
home, at home, οἴκοι
from home, οἴκοθεν
Thebes, Θῆβαι, *f. pl.*
Thebans, Θηβαῖοι
announce, ἀγγέλλω
Spartans, Λακεδαιμόνιοι
remain, μένω
the general and his followers, οἱ
ἀμφὶ τὸν στρατηγόν
at Marathon, Μαραθῶνι, *f.*
greatly, πολὺ

Exercise 19.

mainland, ἤπειρος, -ου, *f.*
Plataea, Πλαταιαῖ, *f. pl.*
Cyrus, Κῦρος
Sardis, Σάρδεις, *f. pl.* (like πόλις)
against, ἐπि, *Acc.*
Sparta, Σπάρτη, *f.*

Exercise 20.

night, νύξ, -κτός, *f.*
set out, start, αἴρω, ἀφορμάσω
[Aor. ἀφωρμῆθην]
dawn, morning, έως, έω, *f.*
at dawn, daybreak, ἅμ' ἡμέρᾳ,
ἄμα τῇ ἔω
evening, ἐσπέρα, *f.*
towards evening, πρὸς ἐσπέραν
sleep, καθεύδω
stade (i.e. a furlong), στάδιον, *n.*
[pl. στάδια or στάδιοι]
foot, πούς, ποδός, *m.*
run, τρέχω
parasang (a Persian measure of
distance, nearly 4 miles), παρα-
σάγγης, -ου, *m.*

to be distant from, ἀπέχω, with
Gen. or with ἀπό and Gen.
early, πρωῒ
late, ὀψὲ
winter, χειμῶν, -ῶνος, *m.*
long (of time), μακρός or πολύς
time, χρόνος, *m.*
year, έτος, -ους, *n.*, or ἑνιαυτός, *m.*
height, ὕψος, -ους, *n.*
breadth, εὐρός, -ους, *n.*
length, μῆκος, -ους, *n.*
spear, αἰχμή, *f.*

Exercise 21.

on the following day, τῇ ὥστερᾳ
(ἡμέρᾳ)
summer, θέρος, -ους, *n.*
by land, κατὰ γῆν

by sea, κατὰ θάλασσαν
rule, δρχω
month, μήν, μηνός, *m.*
enter εἰσέρχομαι εἰς, *Acc.*; εἰσειμι εἰς, *Acc.*
my, ὁ ἐμός
spring, ἥαρ, ἥρος, *n.*
another, ἄλλος
take place, happen, γίγνομαι
meadow, λειμών, -ῶνος, *m.*

Exercise 22.

much, πολύς
send out, ἐκπέμπω
force, βία, *f.*
powerful, δυνατός
life, βίος, *m.*

Exercise 23.

clever, δεινός
power, δύναμις, -εως, *f.*; κράτος, -ους, *n.*
faster, θᾶσσον (comp. of ταχέως)
glory, κλέος, -ους, *n.*; δόξα, *f.*
Xenophon, Ξενοφῶν, -ῶντος
book, βίβλος, -ου, *f.*
write, γράφω ορ συγγράφω
Thucydides, Θουκυδίδης, -ου
broad, εὐρύς, -εῖα, -ύ
ditch, τάφρος, -ου, *f.*
Aristides, Ἀριστείδης, -ου
just, δίκαιος

Exercise 24.

disgraceful, αἰσχρός
weapon (missile), βέλος, -ους, *n.*
brother, ἀδελφός
attack, charge, ἔπειμι

Exercise 25.

hoplite, heavy armed soldier,
οπλιτης, -ου, *m.*

Persians, οἱ Μῆδοι οἱ Πέρσαι
barbarian, βάρβαρος, *m.*
money, ἀργύριον, *n.*
(possessions), χρήματα, -ων,
n. pl.
less (*adv.*), ἡσσον

Exercise 26.

enslave, καταδουλώ
Plataeans, Πλαταιης, -έων (like *pl.*
of βασιλεύς)
at once, immediately, εὐθύς
Jason, Ἰάσων, -ονος

Exercise 27.

Thermopylae, Θερμοπύλαι, -ῶν, *f.*
pl.
Ephialtes, Ἐφιάλτης, -ου
leave, leave behind, λείπω, κατα-
λείπω
again, αὖθις, πάλιν
greatly, very much, σφόδρα, πολύ
pleasant, sweet, ήδύς, -εῖα, -ύ
seize, συλλαμβάνω

Exercise 28.

carry, φέρω
food, σῖτος, *m.* (*pl.* τὰ σῖτα)
condemn, κατακρίνω
after (*prep.*), μετά, *Acc.*
come home, κάτειμι
honour, glory, δόξα, *f.*

Exercise 29.

evil tidings, τὰ κακά
Persia, ἡ Περσική
journey, ὁδός, -οῦ, *f.*
ask, request, αἰτέω
Archimedes, Ἀρχιμήδης, -ου

lead, **διγω**

leave, depart from, **ἀπέρχομαι ἐκ**,
Gen.

Exercise 30.

to be in command of, **ἡγεμονεύω**,
Gen.

few, **δλίγοι**

despise, **καταφρονέω**, *Gen.*

return, **ἀπέρχομαι**

put to death, **ἀποκτείνω**. For
Passive use **ἀποθνήσκω**

Exercise 31.

rout, put to flight, **τρέπω**

cavalry, **ἱππῆς**, *m. pl.* (like
βασιλεύς)

retreat, **ἀναχωρέω**

allow, **έάω**

no one, nobody, **οὐδεὶς**

already, **ἤδη**

am able, **δύναμαι**

reach, arrive at, **προσέρχομαι**
πρός, *Acc.* **ἀφικνέομαι πρός**,
Acc.

Exercise 32.

set sail, weigh anchor, **ἀλρω**

to be away, **ἀπειμι**

compel, **ἀναγκάζω**

Socrates, **Σωκράτης**, *-ους*

ready, **έτοιμος**

ask questions, **ἐρωτάω**. [For
Aorist, **ἥρομην** from **ἔρομαι** may
be used]

Exercise 33.

same, **ὁ αὐτός**

master, **δεσπότης**

teacher, **διδάσκαλος**

dangerous, **δεινός**

reward, **μισθός**, *m.*

consider, think, **νομίζω**

Exercise 34.

pleasing, **ἡδύς**, *-εῖα*, *-ύ*
receive, take, **λαμβάνω**, **δέχομαι**
to (of persons), **ώς**, *Acc.*

Exercise 35.

love, **φιλέω**

good, **ἀγαθός**

some . . . others, **οἱ μὲν . . . οἱ δέ**
horse, **ἵππος**

be victorious, **νικάω**

go away, **ἀπέρχομαι**, **ἀπειμι**

go out, **ἔξερχομαι**, **ἔξειμι**

sword, **ξίφος**, *-ους*, *n.*

Exercise 36.

report, **ἀγγέλλω**

punishment, **ζημία**, *f.*

willing, willingly, **ἐκών**, *-οῦσα*, *-όν*

Exercise 37.

towards, in the direction of, **ἐπι**,

Gen.

Lemnos, **Λήμνος**, *-ου*, *f.*

however, **μέντοι** (second word)

be persuaded, use **πείθομαι** (Pass.
of **πείθω**) with *Dat.*

the rest, **οἱ ἄλλοι**

defend, **φυλάσσω**

property, **κτήματα**, **χρήματα**, *n. pl.*

Exercise 38.

Mytilene, **Μυτιλήνη**, *f.*

especially, most of all, **μάλιστα**,
adv. from **μάλα**

Lesbian, **Λέσβιος**

accomplish, **πράσσω**, **ἐκπράσσω**

retreat, **ἀναχωρέω**

place, **tópos**, *m.*; **χωρίον**, *n.*

first, *adv.*, πρῶτον
 water, θύμωρ, -ατος, *n.*
 where, *rel. adv.*, οὗ, δπου
 begin, ἀρχομαι
 suffer terribly, δεινὰ πάσχειν (*Lit.*
 suffer terrible things)
 provisions, ἐπιτήδεια, *n. pl.*
 bring, κομίζω
 it seems good, δοκει, *Dat.*
 following, next, ἐπιγιγνόμενος

Exercise 39.

at the approach of spring, ἄμα τῷ
 ἥρι
 baggage, σκεύη, *n. pl.*, from σκεῦος,
 -ους
 leave behind, καταλεῖπω
 cross (a mountain), ὑπερβαίνω
 go down, καταβαίνω
 mountain, ὅρος, -ους, *n.*
 plain, πεδίον, *n.*
 await, προσδέχομαι
 infantry, πεζοί (from πεζός, a foot-
 soldier)

Exercise 40.

Persians, Μῆδοι
 Marathon, Μαραθών, -ῶνος, *f.*
 reach, ἀφικνέομαι πρός, εἰς, *Acc.*
 draw up, αγγαυ, τάσσω
 be general, στρατηγέω
 Miltiades, Μιλτιάδης, -ου
 be about, μέλλω (*Inf. Future*)
 state, πόλις, -εως, *f.*
 be grateful, χάριν οἴδα, χάριν
 ἔχω, *Dat.*
 help, come to help, βοηθέω,
 Dat.
 ready, ἔτοιμος (with Inf.)
 it is possible, ἔξεστι
 host, πλῆθος, -ους, *n.*
 fall upon, attack, ἵππεπτω, *Dat.*

disembark, ἀποβαίνω ἐκ, *Gen.*
 fear, φοβέομαι; Λοτ., in middle
 sense, ἔφοβήθην
 attack, προσβολή, *f.*

Exercise 41.

say, tell, φημι; Past ἔφην. [Followed by *Acc.* and *Inf.*]
 λέγω; Λοτ. ἔπον. [Generally
 followed by ὡς or δτι]
 say that . . . not, οὐ φημι, λέγω
 δτι οὐ

answer, reply, ἀποκρίνομαι
 report, ἀγγέλλω, ἀπαγγέλλω
 confess, admit, ὅμολογέω
 promise, ὑπισχνέομαι
 hope, ἐλπίζω
 swear, δμνυμι
 threaten, ἀπειλέω
 think, νομίζω, οἶμαι
 know, οἶδα
 perceive, αἰσθάνομαι
 hear, ἀκούω
 ascertain, πυνθάνομαι.
 approach, προσέρχομαι
 marsh, λιμνη, *f.*
 fall, πίπτω
 down, καταπίπτω
 encamp, αὐλίζομαι, στρατοπε-
 δεύομαι
 fortify, τειχίζω
 Demosthenes, Δημοσθένης, -ους
 Philip, Φίλιππος
 be able, δύναμαι
 be present, πάρειμι

Exercise 43.

scout, κατάσκοπος, *m.*
 Aeneas, Αἰνείας, -ου
 right, δίκαιος
 Thermopylae, Θερμοπύλαι, -ῶν, *f.*
 deed, ἄργον

Exercise 44.

burn (*intransitive*), καίρω (Mid.
of καίω)
assert (with idea of pretence),
φάσκω
bring to, προσθέρω πρός, *Acc.*
prisoner of war, αἰχμάλωτος
do wrong, ἀδικέω
soul, ψυχή, *f.*
immortal, ἀθάνατος, -ον
once, once upon a time, ποτέ
(enclitic)

Exercise 45.

after this, μετὰ ταῦτα, ἐκ τούτων.
believe, πείθομαι
despair, be despondent, ἀθυμέω
speedily, ταχέως, διὰ τάχους
whole, πᾶς
news, τὰ ἀγγελθέντα

Exercise 46.

advance, προχωρέω
Attica, ἡ Ἀττική
chief men, οἱ πρῶτοι (τῆς πόλεως)
senate, βουλή, *f.*
Acropolis, ἀκρόπολις, *f.*
advise, πείθω
the majority, οἱ πολλοὶ
determine, use δοκεῖ (imper.),
Dat.
embark, ἐμβαίνειν εἰς, *Acc.*
in safety, ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ
wooden, ξύλινος (*adj.* formed from
ξύλον, wood)
god, θεός, *m.*
take refuge in, καταφεύγω εἰς

Exercise 47.

assist, help, ὀφελέω, *Acc.*
plainly, clearly, σαφῶς

destroy, overthrow (a city), καθα-
ρέω
finish, end, τελευτάω (also used
intransitively)
punish, κολάζω
set sail, αἴρω

Exercise 48.

Conon, Κόνων, -ώνος
be taken, ἀλίσκομαι
invade, εἰσβάλλω εἰς

Exercise 50.

try, πειράμαι
field, ἀγρός, *m.*

Exercise 51.

meadow, λειμών, -ώνος, *m.*
thither, ἐκεῖστε
boy, παῖς, -δός
speak to, converse with, διαλέ-
γομαι, *Dat.*
escape, ἔκφεύγω

Exercise 52.

way, ὁδός, -οῦ, *f.*
find, εὑρίσκω
how (with adjectives and adverbs),
ώς
I am come, ἔκω
wonder, θαυμάζω

Exercise 53.

lead (of a road), φέρω
learn, μανθάνω
train, παιδεύω
enemy (often *private* enemy),
ἐχθρός
here, ἐνθάδε
there, ἐκεῖ

Exercise 54.

why? τί; διὰ τί;
no longer, οὐκέτι
friendly, εὔνοος, -ουν
seem, δοκέω, φαίνομαι
come to the help of, βοηθέω, *Dat.*

Exercise 55.

be in, ἔνειμι
archer, τοξότης, -ου, *m.*
so great, τοσοῦτος, -άντη, -οῦτον
danger, κίνδυνος
find out, ascertain, γιγνώσκω

Exercise 56.

ambassadors, πρέσβεις, -εων
fruit, καρπός, *m.*
gather, συγκομίζομαι
tree, δένδρον
twice a year, δὶς τοῦ ἐνιαυτοῦ
inhabit, ἐνοικέω
inhabitants, οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες, οἱ
ἐνοικοί
kindly, graciously, ήπιως, εὐμενῶς
pass through, διαβαίνω, *Acc.*
suffer harm, κακὸν πάσχω
strange, foreign, βάρβαρος, -ον
understand, συνίημι
people, δῆμος

Exercise 57.

independent, αὐτόνομος, -ον
permit, ἔτω
therefore, οὖν (2nd word)
revolt, ἀφίσταμαι (also the intransitive tenses of ἀφίστημι in the Active)
few, δλῖγοι
rule, ἀρχή, *f.*
hither, δεῦρο

become enraged, δργίζομαι
soon, δι' δλῖγον, τάχα

Exercise 58.

assemble, συνέρχομαι (followed by εἰς or πρός with *Acc.*)
shore, ἀκτή, *f.*
Colchis, Κολχίς, -ίδος, *f.*
seek, ζητέω
golden, χρύσος, -η, -ουν
come down, (esp. towards the sea), κατέρχομαι
send for, μεταπέμπομαι, *Acc.*
ox, βοῦς, βοός
skin, ἄσκος, *m.*
come on, εισιει, ἐπιγίγνομαι
still, yet, ἔτι
pirate, robber, ληστής, -ον
day before, προτεραλα (ἡμέρα)

Exercise 59.

return (esp. from exile), κατέρχομαι, κάτειμι
stranger, guest, ξένος, *m.*
Jason, Ἰάσων, -ονος
Medea, Μήδεια
young, νέος
not yet, οὔπω
pursue, διώκω
near, ἐγγύς, *adv.*
be at a loss, ἀπορέω
limb, μέλος, -ους, *n.*
throw, cast, βάλλω, βίπτω
stop, hinder, κωλύω,
only (*Adj.*), μόνος
approach, draw near, πρόσειμι, προσέρχομαι
thus (referring to what goes before), οὕτως; (referring to what follows), ἀδε

Exercise 60.

need, δέομαι
condemn, καταγιγνώσκω
cowardice, κακλά, *f.*
accuse, αἰτιάομαι
hear, ἀκούω, *Gen.* of person, *Acc.*
 of thing
sing, φέδω
noise, ψόφος, *m.*
remember, μέμνημαι (from μιμνή-
 σκω)
ancestor, πρόγονος
folly, μωρία, ἀνοια, *f.*
separate, ἀπαλλάσσω
forget, ἐπιλανθάνομαι

Exercise 61.

message, ἀγγελία, *f.*
touch, ἄπτομαι
money (*i.e.* coined money), ἀργύριον
begin, ἀρχομαι
assistance, βοήθεια, *f.*
buy, ὀνέομαι [Aorist, ἐπριάμην]
drachma, δραχμή, *f.*
share, μετέχω
admire, θαυμάζω, *Acc.* of person,
 Gen. of cause
pity, οἰκτίω, *Acc.* of person, *Gen.*
 of cause
be grateful, χάριν ἔχω or χάριν οἴδα,
 Dat. of person, *Gen.* of cause
Cleon, Κλέων, -ωνος
give a share of, μεταδίδωμι, *Dat.*
 of person, *Gen.* of thing shared
envy, ξηλόω, *Acc.* of person, *Gen.*
 of cause
leisure, σχολή, *f.*

Exercise 62.

help, go to the help of, βοηθέω, *Dat.*
allies, σύμμαχοι
it is expedient, συμφέρει, *Dat.*
obey, πείθομαι, *Dat.*

it is possible, ἔξεστι, *Dat.* [Often
used to translate *may* or *be al-
lowed*]

it seems good, δοκεῖ, *Dat.* [Often
used to translate *they deter-
mined*, etc., ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς]

infantry, πεζός, *m.*

by force, βίᾳ

Apollo, Ἀπόλλων, -ωνος, *m.*

follow, ἐπομαι, *Dat.*

fight (against), μάχομαι, *Dat.*

temple, νεώς, -ώ, *m.*

Delos, Δῆλος, -ου, *f.*

Exercise 63.

most, the majority, οἱ πολλοὶ
use, χράσμαι, *Dat.*
help, βοήθεια, *f.*
birth, race, γένος, -ους, *n.*
try, πειράομαι
often, many times, πολλάκις.
good fortune, εὐτυχία, *f.*
before, formerly, πρότερον, τὸ
πρίν

Exercise 64.

live, dwell, οἰκέω
meet, ἐντυγχάνω, *Dat.*
conceal, hide, κρύπτω, double *Acc.*
broad, εὐρύς, -εῖα, -ύ; but here use
the Adverbial Accusative εὐρός
in breadth
in no respect, not at all, οὐδέν
music, ἡ μουσική
a certain, τις (Enclitic)

Exercise 65.

speak evil of, κακῶς	λέγω, <i>Acc.</i>
κακὰ	

speak well of, εὖ λέγω, *Acc.*

κακῶς	δράω, ποιέω, <i>Acc.</i>
κακὰ	

injure, κακῶς

δράω, ποιέω, <i>Acc.</i>
ἀγαθῶς

do good to, εὖ

ποιέω, <i>Acc.</i>
ἀγαθῶς

rulers, οἱ ἄρχοντες, οἱ ἐν τέλει
Lysander, Λύσανδρος
name, δνομα, -ατος, n.
in other respects, τὰ ἄλλα
be pleased with, ἡδομαι, *Dat.*
feel pain, ἀλγέω

Exercise 66.

law, νόμος, m.
Myce næ, Μυκῆναι, -ῶν
overcome, get the better of, περι-
γίγνομαι, *Gen.*
conquer, νικάω, *Acc.*; κρατέω,
Gen.
be in possession of, κρατέω
Thracian, Θρᾶξ, -ακός
be fitting, πρέπει (impers.), *Dat.*
word, λόγος, m.
be superior to, διαφέρω, *Gen.*

Exercise 67.

parent, γονεύς, -έως
fortunate, εὐτυχής, -ής
find out, ascertain, πυνθάνομαι
deceive, ἔξαπτάω
tyrant, τύραννος, m.

Exercise 68.

never, οὐδέποτε, μηδέποτε
miserably, ἀθλίως
speak truth, ἀληθέω
foolish, μῶρος, ἀνόητος

Exercise 69.

again, αὖθις, πάλιν
flower, ἄνθος, -ους, n.

Exercise 70.

desire, ἐπιθυμέω, *Gen.*
riches, πλούτος, m.
yield, hand over, παραδίδωμι

Exercise 71.

advise, παραινέω, *Dat.*
set free, let go, ἀφίημι
make peace, σπονδὰς ποιέομαι
warn, νοθεύεω
Olynthus, "Ολυνθος, -ου, f.
territory of, η Ὀλυνθιακή
induce, πελθω
despise, δλιγωρέω, καταφρονέω,
Gen.
exhort, παρακελεύομαι, *Dat.*
Themistocles, Θεμιστοκλῆς, -έους
beg, entreat, παραιτέομαι
spare, φείδομαι, *Gen.*
innocent, ἀνάτιος, -ον
resist, ἀμύνομαι, *Acc.*; ἀνθίσταμαι,
Dat.

Exercise 72.

charge, ἔπειμι, *Dat.*
able, οἷός τε
they were able, οἷοί τε ἦσαν, etc.
youth, νεανίας, -ου, m.
foreign lands, η βάρβαρος [χώρα]
with difficulty, hardly, σχολῇ
treaty, σπονδαῖ, f. pl.
break (treaty), λύω
make treaty with, σπονδὰς ποιεῖ-
σθαι πρός, *Acc.*
authorities, magistrates, οἱ ἐν τέλαι
remain, linger, διατρίβω
in vain, μάτην
journey, πορεύομαι
captive, αἰχμάλωτος

Exercise 73.

treat badly, κακὰ ποιέω, *Acc. per-*
son
lead, guide, ἡγέομαι, *Dat.*
sophist, σοφιστής, -οῦ, m.

make a display of, ἐπιδείκνυμαι
real, ἀναγιγνώσκω
letter, ἐπιστολή, *f.*
prisoner (in prison), δεσμώτης, -ου
(of war), αἰχμάλωτος
pardon, συγγιγνώσκω, *Dat.*

Exercise 74.

half, ἡμίσυς, -εια, -u. (Use either as ordinary adj., e.g. τὸ ἡμίσυν τεῖχος, half the wall, or with the noun in Gen., but giving its gender and number to ἡμίσυς, e.g. οἱ ἡμίσεις τῶν νεῶν, half the ships)
innocent, ἀναίτιος, -ου
arrest, συλλαμβάνω
believe, πιστεύω
upright, δίκαιος

Exercise 75.

Minyaes, Μίνυαι, -ῶν, *pl.*
make war upon, πόλεμον ἐπιφέρω,
Dat.
every year, δσα ἔτη
give, provide, πορίζω
Hercules, Ἡρακλῆς, -έous
ear, ὄὖς, ὠτός, *n.*
nose, ρίς, ρινός, *f.* or *pl.* ρίνες
cut off, ἀποτέμνω
tribute, φόρος, *m.*
then (=next, afterwards, often opposed to πρώτον μέν), ἔπειτα
[δέ]
avenge, τιμωρέω, *Dat.* of person
avenged, *Acc.* of person on
whom vengeance is taken. Mid.
τιμωρέομαι, I avenge myself on,
Acc.
swear, δμνυμι
gaze, καθαιρέω

to the ground, utterly, κατ' ἀκρας
refuse, οὐκ ἔθέλω

Exercise 76.

Alemaeon, Ἀλκμαίων, -ωνος
however, μέντοι (*2nd word*), δμως
(1st word)
Delphi, Δελφοί, -ῶν, *m.*
Pythia (priestess of Apollo), τὴ
Πυθία
despair, ἀθυμέω, ἀθύμως ἔχω
Achelous (river), Ἄχελῶς, *m.*
sand, ψάμμος, -ου, *f.*
earth, γῆ, *f.*
bring down, καταφέρω
new, νέος
allow, ἔάω, *Acc.* ἐπιτρέπω, *Dat.*
live, dwell in, ἐνοικέω ἐν

Exercise 77.

feast, ἑορτή, *f.*
middle, μέσος (taking the *Predicative* position, e.g. μέση ἡ νήσος, the middle of the island)
Phineus, Φινεύς, -έως
hall, αὐλή, *f.*
at the head of, ἄγων
band, crowd, δχλος, *m.*
Perseus, Περσεύς, -έως
steal, κλέπτω
Andromeda, Ἄνδρομεδή
give in marriage, ἐκδίωμι
adversary, opponent, ἐναντίος
equally, on equal terms, ἐξ ίσου
at last, τέλος or τὸ τέλος
Gorgon, Γοργός, -οῦς, *f.*
head, κεφαλή, *f.*
draw forth, uncover, ἐκκαλύπτω
display, ἀποδείκνυμι
made of stone, λίθινος. (Here use with γίγνομαι)

Exercise 78.

Troy, Τροία, *f.*
 Trojans, Τρώες, -ων
 at sunset, ἡλίῳ καταδύντες
 Cyclops, Κύκλωψ, -ωπος
 meet, ἐντυγχάνω, *Dat.*
 Ulysses, Οδυσσεύς, -έως
 what had befallen him, =what he
 had suffered
 comrade, companion, ἄταρος, *m.*
 alone, μόνος
 cavern, σπήλαιον, *n.*
 beg, entreat, παρανέργομαι
 run the risk of, κινδυνεύω, with
 Inf.
 hunger, famine, λιμός, *m.*
 shepherd, ποιμήν, -ένος, *m.*
 Polyphemus, Πολύφημος
 suppliant, ικέτης

Exercise 79.

appoint, make, transitive tenses
 of καθίστημι
 be appointed, intransitive tenses
 and Middle of καθίστημι
 take bribes, δῶρα λαμβάνω
 pay (tribute), φέρω
 throw away, ρίπτω
 cause to revolt, transitive tenses
 of ἀφίστημι (ἀπό)
 revolt, intransitive tenses and
 Middle of ἀφίστημι
 for my part, τὸ ἐπ' ἐμέ
 be angry, ὅργιζομαι, *Dat.*, or δι-
 ὅργης ἔχειν, *Acc.*
 abandon, desert, ἀπολεῖπω
 in public, publicly, δημοσίᾳ
 privately, ιδίᾳ
 serve, ὀφελέω
 the state, ἡ πόλις or τὸ κοινόν
 to the best of their ability, κατὰ
 δύναμιν

reduce, subdue, καταστρέφομαι
 punish (take vengeance on), τιμω-
 ρέομαι, *Acc.*
 tribe, φῦλον, *n.*

Exercise 80.

Milesians, Μιλήσιοι
 oppress, πιέζω
 rank, τάξις, -έως, *f.*
 former, πρόν, *Adv.*
 plague, pestilence, λοιμός, *m.*
 spring up, arise, γέγνομαι
 delay, wait, ἐπέχω
 reproach, ὀνειδίζω, *Dat.*
 unfortunate, δυστυχής
 duty, τὸ προσῆκον
 Homer, "Ομηρος
 praise, ἐπαινέω, *Acc.*
 Agamemnon, Ἀγαμέμνων, -ονος

Exercise 81.

continue, remain διατελέω (with
 Participle)
 faithful, πιστός
 peace, ειρήνη, *f.*
 voyage, πλοῦς, πλοῦ, *m.*

Exercise 82.

suddenly, ἐξαίφνης, ἀφω
 stand up, intransitive tenses and
 Middle of ἀνίστημι
 people, δῆμος, *m.*
 loose, λύω

Exercise 83.

use all means, πάντι τρόπῳ χράο-
 μαι
 you must, δεῖ σε with Inf.
 Brasidas, Βρασίδας, -ου
 call, summon, καλέω, προσκαλέω,
 μεταπέμπομαι

consult, ask the opinion of, συμβουλεύομαι, κοινωνέομαι, *Dat.*
on behalf of, ὑπέρ, *Gen.*
hasten (trans.), σπεύδω
make haste, hasten (intrans.),
σπεύδω or Middle, ἐπείγομαι
return, ἐπανέρχομαι
trophy, τρόπαιον
set up, ἀστημι (transitive tenses)
bury, θάπτω
be, be sufficient, ὑπάρχω

Exercise 84.

watch, τηρέω
carefully, ἐπιμελῶς
poet, ποιητής, -οῦ, *m.*
write poetry, ποιέω
write a prose book, generally
συγγράφω
inform him of = announce to him,
ἀγγέλλω
doctor, λατρός, *m.*
attend to, θεραπεύω
in all directions, everywhere,
πανταχόστε
burn, burn up, κατακαίω
Spartan (one of the true Spartans),
Σπαρτιάτης, -οῦ

Exercise 85.

Thrace, Θράκη, *f.*
dead, dead body, νεκρός
falsely, ψευδῶς
obtain, κτάομαι
powerful, δυνατός
for the future, ἀγαμή, τοῦ λοιποῦ

Exercise 86.

consult (the oracle), χράομαι, *Dat.*
satrap, σατράπης, οὐ.
trench, τάφρος, *f.*
discover, εὑρίσκω, μανθάνω

Exercise 87.
unexpectedly, ἀπροσδοκήτως, or
use the Adj. ἀπροσδόκητος, -ον,
which means both unexpected
and not expecting, υπανταρε.
be punished, δίκας δίδωμι (*Lat.*
poenas dare)
punish, exact penalty, δίκας λαμβάνω πορά (*Lat.* poenas sumere)
take care, φυλάσσομαι, ἐπιμελέομαι
write down, συγγράφω
prudent, σώφρων, φρόνιμος

Exercise 88.

lose, ἀπόλλυμι

Exercise 89.

sensible, prudent, wise, φρόνιμος
careless, lazy, βάθυμος
opportunity, καιρός, *m.*
let slip an opportunity, καιρὸν παρίημι
hardship, toil, πόνος, *m.*

Exercise 90.

bold, τολμηρός, θρασύς, -εῖα, -ύ
unwilling, against their will,
ἀκων, -ουσα, -ον
hold out, ἀντέχω
dread, δέδοικα, or δέδια

Exercise 91.

closely, συνεχῶς
Olymthus, "Ολυνθος, *f.*
choose, αἱρέομαι, ἔξαιρέομαι
weak, ἀσθενής
summon home (from exile), κατάγω
Syracusans, Συρακόσιοι
build, οἰκοδομέω
surround, περιέχω

spend, ἀναλίσκω
in the time of, ἐπί, *Gen.*
pay, μισθός, *m.*
provide, παρέχω, πορίζω

after a short time, οὐδεὶς μακρού,
δι’ ὀλίγου
exhaust, κατατρίβω

Exercise 92.

consult, κοινόμοια, *Dat.*, συμ-
βουλεύομαι, *Dat.*
rejoice, χαίρω
overthrow (subdue), καταστρέ-
φομαι
empire, ἀρχή
honourable, καλός
be banished, ἐκπίπτω

win a victory, νικάω
wreck, ναυάγιον, *n.*
cling to, ἔχομαι, *Gen.*
officers, οἱ ἄρχοντες
harm, κακόν
to be put on trial, ἐστί κρίσιγ κατα-,
στῆναι
I defend myself, ἀπολογέομαι
listen to, ἀκροάμαι
the penalty, τὸ δίκαιος διδόναι

Exercise 93.

Cretans, Κρήτες, -ῶν
Poseidon, Ποσειδῶν, -ῶνος (*Acc.*
Ποσειδῶ)
Minos, Μίνως, -ως or -ω
bull, ταῦρος, *m.*
sacrifice, θύω
wave, κύμα, -ατος, *n.*
keep, κατέχω
mad, μανικός
forest, θλη, *f.*
keep one's word, τῇ πίστει ἐμμένειν
(πίστις, -εως, pledge)
monster, θηρίον, *n.*

Cadmus, Κάδμος, *m.*
Cadmeia, Καδμεία, *f.*
citadel, ἀκρόπολις, -εως, *f.*
name, ὄνομάζω
fortify, περιτειχίζω
Amphion, Ἀμφίων, -ωνος
compel, ἀναγκάζω
to be built round, περιβάλλεσθαι,
Dat.
from all sides, πανταχόθεν

Exercise 94.

Eurystheus, Εὐρυσθεύς, -έως
rope, σχοινίον, *n.*
spear, αἰχμή, *f.*
roar, make a noise, βρυχάομαι
on (from) all sides, πανταχόθεν
approach, πρόσειμι
impossible, ἀδύνατον
avoid, ὑπεξίσταμαι
firmly, βεβαίως
horn, κέρας, -ατος, *n.*
hold, κατέχω

people (generally), οἱ ἄνθρωποι

Exercise 98.
to be ill, νοσέω

Exercise 99.
send forward, προπέμπω
forbid, οὐκ ἔάω
guilty, αἰτιος
acquit, ἀπολέω
return, ἐπανέρχομαι
how long? πόσον χρόνον;

last, διατελέω
unprepared, ἀπροσδόκητος

Exercise 101.

be ignorant, ἀγνοέω
be mistaken, ἀμαρτάνω

Exercise 102.

work, ἔργον
this is so, this is the case, ταῦτα
οὕτως ἔχει
dare, τολμάω

Exercise 103.

coward, cowardly, κακός, δειλός
plot against, ἐπιβουλεύω, *Dat.*

Exercise 104.

without our help, ἄνευ ἡμῶν
Potidaea, Ποτίδαια, *f.*
also, even, καὶ
such a thing, τὸ τοιοῦτο
Pydna, Πύδνη, *f.*
give advice, συμβουλεύω

Exercise 105.

unjust, ἀδικος, -ον
blame, μέμφομαι, *Dat.*
be well (of things), τὰ πράγματα
καλῶς ἔχει
letter, ἐπιστολή, *f.*
welcome, ἀσπάζομαι.
be master of, κρατέω, *Gen.*

Exercise 106.

Made the following proclamation =
announce these things, τάδε (see
p. 133)
through, all round, περί, *Acc.*
Polynices, Πολυνείκης, -ονς
Argives, Ἀργεῖοι

sister, ἀδελφή, *f.*
so greatly, τοσοῦτο(ν), *Adv. Acc.*
disobey, ἀπειθέω, *Dat.*
even if, καὶ ἂν, καὶ εἰ
very, exceedingly, μάλα, σφόδρα
be angry, ἀγανακτέω
act rightly, ποιέω τὸ προσῆκον
be afraid, δέοικα
guard, φύλαξ, -ακος
shut up, in prison, ἔργω

Exercise 107.

come forward (to speak), παρέρχο-
μαι, πάρειμι
Athenians—in a speech often ὁ
ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι (so, ἄνδρες
στρατιῶται, etc.)
increase, αὔξανω, αὔξω
the present danger, τὸ αὐτίκα
δεινόν
as . . . as, οὕτως . . . ὡς
but as it is, νῦν δέ
be confident, θαρρέω
as strongly as possible, ὡς κράτιστα
forces, δύναμις, -εως, *f.*
collect, levy, ἀθροίζω
common, κοινός

Exercise 108.

trust, πιστεύω, *Dat.*
panic, φόβος, *m.*
garrison, φρουρός (from φρουρός,
a guard), φρούριον
call together, συγκαλέω
comrades (Voc.), ὁ ἄνδρες
disaster, συμφορά, *f.*
consider, deliberate, βουλεύομαι
be expedient, συμφέρει, *Dat.*
for the present, ἐν τῷ παρόντι
at the present moment, τὸ παρα-
τίκα

take service, serve as a soldier,
 στρατεύω
 be in want of, ἀπορέω, δέομαι, *Gen.*
 the opportunity comes, παρέχει
 (impers.)

Exercise 109.

address, exhort, παρακελεύομαι,
Dat.
 perhaps, ἄστος
 on the side of, μετά, *Gen.*
 defend, ἀμύνομαι, *Dat.*
 impious, ἀσεβής, -ές

Exercise 110.

happen, τυγχάνω
 escape notice, λανθάνω, *Acc.*
 just, δίκαιος
 anticipate, φθάνω, *Acc.*
 and that too, καὶ ταῦτα (*adv.*
Acc.)

Exercise 111.

run, τρέχω
 blame, ἐν αἰτίᾳ ἔχω
 judges, γιγυμεν, δικασταῖ (from
 δικαστής, -οῦ)
 dismiss, ἀφίημι
 from (of persons), παρά
 both, ἀμφότεροι οἱ . . .
 splendid, καλός

Exercise 112.

be delighted, ἅδομαι, *Dat.*
 treat, behave to, χράομαι, *Dat.*
 threaten, ἀπειλέω, *Dat.*
 carelessness, ἀμελεῖα, *f.*
 strive for, ἐρέζω περὶ, *Gen.*
 leadership, ἡγεμονία, *f.*
 Cimon, Κίμων, -ωνος
 Lemnos, Δῆμνος, -ου, *f.*
 it is possible, πάρεστι

Exercise 113.

live, pass one's life, διάγω
 be hated by, hateful to, ἀπεχθά-
 νομαι, *Dat.*
 the government, οἱ ἐν τέλει
 Brasidas and οἱ ἀμφὶ τὸν Βρα-
 his men, οἱ περὶ σίδαν
 rejoice, χαίρω
 shield, ἀσπίς, -ίδος, *f.*
 preserve, σώζομαι •
 cautiously, εὐλαβῶς
 position (military), χωρίον, *n.*

Exercise 114.

pass (of time, as subject), διέρχο-
 μαι or use μετά, *Acc.*
 Oedipus, Οἰδίπους, -οδος
 Corinth, Κόρινθος, -ου, *f.*
 oracle, χρηστήριον, *n.*
 queen, βασίλεια
 madness, infatuation, ματη, *f.*
 marry (of man), γαμέω
 (of woman), γαμοῦμαι

herdsman, ποιμήν, -ένος
 tie, bind, δέω
 string, cord, σχοινίον, *n.*
 old man, γέρων, -οντος, *m.*

Exercise 115.

Jocasta, Ἰοκάστη
 bear, endure, τλάω
 room, θάλαμος, *n.*
 thereupon, ἐπειτα, ἐνθα δή, ἐκ δὲ
 τούτων
 daughter, θυγάτηρ, -τρός
 wander, πλανάομαι
 for the future, τὸ λοιπόν

Exercise 116.

I repent, μεταμέλει μοι
 plunder, λεία, *f.*
 resolve, use δοκεῖ
 to be impossible, ἀδύνατον εἶγει

snow, χιών, -όνος, *f.*
 halt, ἀναπαύομαι
 it is to my advantage, λυσιτελεῖ
 μοι, συμφέρει μοι
 give up, surrender, παραδίδωμι
 Themistocles, Θεμιστοκλῆς, -έους
 equip, παρασκευάζομαι
 fleet, ναυτικόν, *n.*

Exercise 117.

I have a part in, μέτεστί μοι with
Gen.
 hold out, ἀνέχομαι
 advise, παραινέω, *Dat.*
 wrong, ἀδικος
 Roman, Ῥωμαῖος
 I have an opportunity, παρέχει μοι

Exercise 118.

verbal adj. of δίδωμι, δοτός; of
 λαμβάνω, ληπτός; of ήστημι,
 στατέος
 give a share of, μεταδίδωμι; *Gen.*
 of thing, *Dat.* of person
 give in marriage, ἐκδίδωμι
 undertake, ἀντιλαμβάνω, *Gen.*;
 ἐπιχειρέω, *Dat.*
 captain, λοχαγός, *m.*
 pass the word along, proclaim,
 παραγγέλλω
 remove (trans.), μετανίστημι; (in-
 trans.), intransitive tenses and
 Middle of μετανίστημι
 Salamis, Σαλαμίς, -ίος, *f.*

Exercise 119.

fall into hands of, ὑποχείριος γίγ-
 νομαι, *Dat.*
 clothes, clothing, ἱσθής, -ήτρος, *f.*
 in time, at the right time, ἐς
 καιρόν, ἐν καιρῷ
 guest, ξένος

win, κτάομαι.
 bread, ἄρτοι, *m. pl.*

Exercise 120.

hate, μισέω
 I have gone away, οἴχομαι
 just, δίκαιος
 unjust, ἀδίκος
 successful, εὐτυχῆς

Exercise 121.

reward, μισθὸν διδόναι, *Dat.*
 capable of, ἴκανός, *Inf.*
 to such a pitch of, ἐς τοσοῦτο, *Gen.*
 boldness, daring, τόλμα
 vote, ψηφίζομαι, *Inf.*
 to go to war, πολεμέω
 keep peace, remain at peace,
 εἰρήνην ἔγω
 before that, πρὸ τοῦ
 obol, ὅβολός, *m.*
 every day, day by day, καθ' ἡμέραν
 at a run, δρόμῳ (from δρόμος, *m.*)
 run forward, προθέω
 wing (of army), κέρας, -ως, *n.*
 simultaneously, ἀμα
 survive, περιγίγνομαι
 look at, προσβλέπω, *Acc.*
 Aeschines, Αἰσχίνης, -ου
 Hannibal, Ἀννιβᾶς, -ου
 Alexander, Ἀλέξανδρος

Exercise 122.

esteem highly, περὶ πολλοῦ (πλείο-
 νος, πλείστου) ποιέομαι, *Acc.*
 elder, πρεσβύτερος
 be hungry, πεινάω
 dark, σκοτεινός
 wound, τραυματίζω, τιτρώσκω

Exercise 123.

stream, ρόν (ρόος), ρόν, *m.*

Exercise 124.

overtake, καταλαμβάνω
intend, διανοέμαι
be engaged in, σπουδάζω περί,
Gen.

observe, αἰσθάνομαι
philosopher, φιλόσοφος, *m.*
origin, beginning, ἀρχή, *f.*
world (=universe), κόσμος, *m.*

Exercise 125.

on the right (wing), ἐπὶ δεξιᾷ
on the left (wing), ἐπ' ἀριστερᾷ
charge, προσβολή, *f.*

station, place, καθίστημι. For
Passive use Intransitive tenses.
the present, τὸ νῦν
finish, ἐκτελέω

Exercise 126.

meanwhile, ἐν τούτῳ
cut off, intercept, ἀπολαμβάνω
Sikels, Σίκελοι
attack, προσβάλλω, *Dat.*
soon after this, οὐ διὰ πολλοῦ
full, πλέως, -α, -ων, *Gen.*
confidence, θάρσος, -ους, *n.*
win reputation for, δόξαν κτάομαι,
Gen.

wisdom, good sense, φρόνησις

Exercise 127.

Carthage, Καρχηδών, -όνος, *f.*
Carthaginian, Punic, Καρχηδόνιος
be distant, ἀπέχω
about (of numbers), μάλιστα, ὡς
army, land force, πεζός, *m.*
help, reinforcements, βοήθεια, *f.*
enough, ίκανός, Inf. or ὥστε with
Inf.

man, πληρός
be in command of, ἔφεστηκα

arm, καθοπλίζω
sortie, sally, ἔκδρομή
repulse, ἀποκρούμαι
Romans, Ρωμαῖοι

Exercise 128.

be cheerful, of good courage, εὐθυ-
μέω

for a little time, ὀλίγον χρόνον
in front, ἐκ τοῦ ἔμπροσθεν •
terrify, φοβέω, ἐκπλήσσω
go about among, φοιτάω ἐν, *Dat.*
exhort, παρακελεύομαι, *Dat.*
Babylon, Βαβυλών, -ῶνος, *f.*
pass through, surmount, περιγγή-
νομαι, *Gen.*
rent, τρέπω
shudder at, ἀποκνέω, *Acc.*
wild beast, θήρ, θηρός, *m.*, θηρίον, *n.*

Exercise 129.

prepare, παρασκευάζω
eclipse, ἔκλεψις, -εως, *f.*
moon, σελήνη, *f.*
prophet, μάντις, -εως, *m.*
wait, rest, ἀναπαύομαι
writer, historian, συγγραφεύς, -έως
relate, ἔξηγόμαι
pious, εὐσεβής, -ές
be guilty of, διφλισκάνω, *Acc.*
waste (time), διατρίβω.
chance, opportunity, καιρός, *m.*

Exercise 130.

devote attention to, undertake
strenuously, ἀπτομαι, *Gen.*,
προσέχω, *Dat.*
eagerly, προθύμως
oppose, ἐναντιόμαι, *Dat.*
fleet, τὸ ναυτικόν, στόλος ναυτικός
enrich, πλουτίζω, *Fut.* πλουτιώ

live on, survive, ἐπιβιόω, *Aor.*
 ἐπεβίων
 probably, κατὰ τὸ εἰκός
 lack, scarcity, ἄνδεια, ἀπορία, *f.*
 raise, abandon, a siege, παύομαι
 τῆς πολιορκίας
 by land and sea, καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ
 κατὰ θάλασσαν
 Phoenicians, Φοίνικες, -ων
 Cilicians, Κιλικες, -ων

Exercise 131.

make peace, σπένδομαι, σπονδᾶς
 ποιέομαι
 restore, ἀποδίδωμι
 receive back, ἀπολαμβάνω
 Amphipolis, Ἀμφίπολις, -εως, *f.*
 gladly, ἡδέως
 maintain, abide by, ἔμμενω, *Dat.*
 evacuate, ἔξειμι ἐκ
 complain, be vexed, δεινὸν
 ποιέομαι
 ephors, ἔφοροι, *m.*
 possess, κέκτημαι (Perf. of κτάομαι)
 reduce, bring over to one's side,
 προσάγομαι
 take by siege, ἐκπολιορκέω
 treat, χράσμαι, *Dat.*
 cruel, ὥμος
 agreement, τὰ δρήτα
 Peloponnesians, Πελοπόννησος, -ου, *f.*
 create, cause to be . . . , καθίστημι

Exercise 132.

expedition, στρατεία, *f.*
 Carduchi, Κάρδουχοι
 Ionian, Ἰόνιος
 Cyprus, Κύπρος, -ου, *f.*
 weigh anchor, αἴρω

Exercise 133.
 keep, έχω
 hunt, θηρεύω

Exercise 134.
 whenever, δοτίς, εἰ τις
 wherever, δποι (if where = whither,
 δποι)
 whenever, ὅπότε, εἰ ποτε
 however, ὅπως
 however many, δσοι
 of whatever kind, ὁποῖος
 turn out, ἀποβαίνω

Exercise 135.
 when (Temporal Conjunction),
 ἐπει, ἐπειδή¹
 until, έως, μέχρι, πρίν
 while, έως
 before, πρίν
 after, ἐπειδή, ἀφ' οῦ, ἐξ οῦ (χρόνου
 understood)
 Darius, Δαρείος, -ου
 Artaxerxes, Ἀρταξέρξης, -ου
 be made, appointed, intransitive
 tenses of καθίστημι
 Persia, η Περσική
 give instructions to, προστάσσω,
Dat.
 seize, arrest, συλλαμβάνω
 keep quiet, ήσυχάζω, ήσυχίαν έχω
 darkness, σκότος, *m.*

Exercise 137.
 bring in, εἰσφέρω, εἰσκομίζω
 settle, διατίθεμαι
 talk nonsense, φλυαρέω
 get up, intransitive tenses and
 middle of ἀνίστημι

¹ ὅτε is a Relative and is not used except with an antecedent expressed or understood; e.g. ήν ποτε χρόνος ὅτε γίγαντες ήσαν, there was a time when there were giants.

eat, ἔσθιω

prison, δεσμωτήριον, *n.*

Exercise 138.

storm, { κατὰ κράτος } αἴρεω
 βίᾳ }

associate with, φοιτάω παρά, *Acc.*
 all but, δύον οὐ
 in different directions, ἀλλοι
 ἄλλοσε

run about, διαθέω

Exercise 139.

drive out, ἐκβάλλω
 be idle, ῥᾳθυμέω
 rebuke, ἐπιτιμάω, *Dat.*
 think, ponder, φροντίζω
 know how, οἶδα, ἐπισταμαι, *Ind.*
 pay, ἀποδίδωμι
 all the time that, δύον χρόνον
 a second time, τὸ δεύτερον
 breakfast, ἀριστον, *n.*
 get one's breakfast, ἀριστοποιέομαι
 join battle with, μάχην συνάπτειν
 πρός, *Acc.*
 ἐς χειρας ἔρχομαι, *Dat.* (of
 fighting at close quarters)

Exercise 140.

* not long afterwards, οὐ πολλῷ
 ὑστερον
 nearly, σχεδόν
 gnaw, κάνωψ, -ωπος, *m.*
 bite, δάκνω
 cattle, κτήνη, -ῶν, *n. pl.*, from
 κτῆνος
 fly, πέτομαι
 leap into, εἰσάλλομαι εἰς, *Acc.*
 (aor. εἰσηλάμην in Ind. but str.
 aor. forms in other moods)
 bring back, ἀπάγω
 pull, ἐπισπάω
 drive, ἔλαύνω

sea, open sea, πόντος, *m.*

swim, νέω

out, ἐκνέω

collect, ἀγέρω, συναγέρω
 be tired, worn out, ἀποκάμνω
 recover, ἀναλαμβάνω

Exercise 141.

resources, χρήματα, -ων, *n.*
 spend, ἀνελίσκω, δαπανάω •
 pleasure, ἡδονή, *f.*
 build (ships), κατασκευάζω
 be involved in, intransitive tenses
 and Middle of καθίστημι, fol-
 lowed by εἰς, *Acc.*
 imitate, τὰ δημια πράσσω, *Dat.*
 prosper (of things), προχωρέω, or
 passive of κατορθώ.

Exercise 142.

secretary, ἐπιστολεύς, -έως
 once, ποτέ¹
 in a dream, δναρ, *adlr.*
 funeral pyre, πυρά, *f.*
 lie, κεῖμαι
 set on fire, ἀπτω
 uproar, θόρυβος, *m.*
 awaken, aronse, ἐγέρω
 finish, complete, ἐξεργάζομαι
 cloak, χλαῖνα, *f.*
 wrap up, ἐγκαλύπτω (here Middle)
 smoke, καπνός, *m.*
 choke, ἀποπνίγω; Aor. Pass.,
 ἀπεπνίγην
 at a distance, διὰ πολλοῦ
 shoot with arrows at, τοξεύω,
 Acc.
 arrow, τόξευμα, -ατος, *n.*
 die, end one's life, τελευτάω

Exercise 143.

delay (trans.), κωλύω
 adverse, ἐναντίος

wind, **άνεμος**, *m.*
 put in (of ships), **προσέχω** *elis*, *Acc.*
 bay, **κόλπος**, *m.*
 propose, **συμβουλεύω**, *Dat.*
 Laconian territory, **ἡ Λακωνική**
 the opportunity having come,
παρασχόν, *Acc. Abs.*
 marine, **ἐπιβάτης**, *-ου*
 fort, **τείχισμα**
 as soon as, **ἐπει τάχιστα**
 Pylos, **Πύλος**, *m.*

Exercise 144.

prevent, **εἴργω**, **κωλύω**
 what prevents, nothing prevents,
τί, οὐδὲν ἐμποδών ἔστιν
 forbid, **οὐκ ἔάω**, **ἀπαγορεύω**; *Aor.*
ἀπεῖπον
 deny, **ἀπαρνέομαι**
 refrain, **ἀπέχομαι**
 Pausanias, **Παυσανίας**, *-ου*
 converse with, **διαλέγομαι**, *Dat.*
 to the best of their power, **κατὰ**
δύναμιν

Exercise 145.

winter, **χειμῶν**, *-ῶνος*, *m.*
 exile, **φυγάς**, *-άδος*
 be worsted, **ήσταόμαι**
 love of their country, say **τὸ φιλο-**
πόλεις εἶγα

Exercise 146.

captain (of ship), **τριήραρχος**, *m.*
 slow, **βραδύς**, *-εῖα*, *-ν*; *adv.* **βρα-**
δέως
 rashly, **ἀσκέπτως**
 hate, **μιστέω**
 provoke, **παροξύνω**
 fare badly, **κακῶς πράσσω**
 at the critical moment, **εἰς καιρόν**

Exercise 147.

trustworthy, **πιστός**
 perilous, **σφαλερός**
 have strength, **ἰσχύω**, *Inf.*
 escape safely, get safe to, **σάζομαι**
εἰς [*Passive Aor.* in this sense]
 shameless, **ἀναιδῆς**, *-ές*
 skilful in, **ἐπιστήμων**, *-ονος*, *Gen.*
 art, **τέχνη**, *f.*
 turn away (intrans.), **ἀποστρέφο-**
μαι; *Aor.* **ἀπεστράφην**

Exercise 148.

cheer, **θαρσύνω**
 encourage, **παραμυθέομαι**, *Dat.*
 to blame, **αἴτιος**
 in reality, **τῷ δόντι**
 there was not a man who . . . not,
οὐδεὶς δόστις οὐκ
 be hopeless (of things), **τὰ πράγ-**
ματα ἀνελπίστως ἔχει

Exercise 149.

in later times, **χρόνῳ ὕστερον**
 tell a story, **μυθολογέω**
 undergo, intransitive tenses of
ὑφίστημι, *Acc.*
 Ephesus, **Ἐφέσος**, *-ον*, *f.*
 of necessity, perforce, **ἀνάγκη**
 willingly at least, **ἐκὼν εἶναι**
 persecute, **διώκω**
 good will, **εὐνοία**, *f.*
 subjects, **ὑπήκοοι**, *m.*
 take vengeance on, **τιμωρέομαι**,
Acc.
 fulfil a promise, **ὑπόσχεσιν ἀποδε-**
δωμι
 die a voluntary death, commit
 suicide, **βιάζεσθαι ἑαυτόν**
 vainly, **μάτην**
 boast, **κομπάζω**
 convict of, **ἄλεγχω** with *Participle*

Exercise 150.

decide previously (of the senate),
 προβούλεύω
 decree, προβούλευμα
 as was usual, κατά τὸ εἰωθός
 release for ransom, ἀπολυτρός
 rebel, intransitive tenses of ἀφί-
 στημι
 colony, ἀποικία, *f.*
 urge, πείθω
 mother city, μητρόπολις, -εως, *f.*
 carry out (a decree), περαίνω
 ratify, κυρώω
 hold a public assembly, ἐκκλησίαν
 ποιέω
 Thurians, Θουριοι
 kinsman, συγγενής, -οῦς
 inflict punishment on, δίκην
 λαμβάνω παρά, *Gen.*

Exercise 151.

remind, ἀναμιμνήσκω
 speak in defence of oneself,
 ἀπολογέομαι
 Dorians, Δωριεύς, -έως
 Rhodian, Ρόδιος
 stature, μέγεθος, -ους, *n.*
 magnificent, εὐπρεπής
 known, famous, γνώριμος
 throughout, ἀνά, *Acc.*
 especially, ἀλλως τε καὶ
 Olympian games, τὰ Ὀλύμπια
 paneratum, παγκράτιον, *n.*
 be victorious in, νικάω, *Acc.*
 restrain, ἀπέχω, κατέχω
 applaud, ἀναθορυβέω

Exercise 152.

rob, ἀφαιρέομαι, *double Acc.*
 accuse, αἰτιάομαι, *Acc. of person,*
Gen. of crime
 ἔγκαλέω, *Dat. of person,*
Acc. of crime
 unguarded, ἀφύλακτος, -ον, ἔρημος
 make haste, σπεύδω

Exercise 153.

experienced, ἐπιστήμων, -ονος,
 ζητεῖρος
 to-day, τήμερον, *adv.*
 on that day, αὐθήμερον, *adv.*
 task, ἔργον
 without accomplishing one's pur-
 pose, without success, ἀπρακτος,
 ον
 be ashamed, αἰσχύνομαι
 weep, κλαίω
 pity, θλεος, *m.*
 deserve, ἀξιός είμι, *Inf.*
 endure (punishment), υπέχω

Exercise 154.

Epigoni, Ἐπίγονοι, -ων
 avenge, τιμωρίω, *Dat. of person*
 avenged, *Acc. of person on whom*
 vengeance is taken. In the
 Middle τιμωρέομαι *Acc. = take*
vengeance on
 hold one's ground, ἀνθίσταμαι
 steadily, firmly, βεβαίως
 raise the siege, intrans. tenses and
 Middle of ἀπανίστημι
 at the advice of, use πείθω
 Tiresias, Τειρεσίας, -ου
 unobserved, secretly, λάθρᾳ (or
 use λανθάνω)
 feast, εὐωχέομαι
 desert, ἔρημός

Exercise 155.

further, πορρωτέρω (from πόρρω)
 desert, ἔρημος [as subst. ή ἔρημος
 (sc. χώρα)]
 be hard pressed, πιέζομαι
 surrender (intrans.), ἐνδίδωμι
 on the point of, all but, δσον οὐκ
 Scythians, Σκύθαι, -ῶν
 agree, come to terms, συμβαίνω
 (followed by ἐφ' ὧτε)
 hostage, δμητρος, *m.*
 invade, εἰσβάλλω *els*

Exercise 156.

right, δεξιός
 left, ἀριστερός, εὐάνυμος, -ον
 hill, λόφος, *m.*
 desert, αὐτομολέω
 know, am conscious, σύνοιδα
 ἐμαντώ
 responsible, αἴτιος
 so far as, δσον
 be on one's side, fight for one,
 συμμάχομαι, *Dat.*

Exercise 157.

Italy, Ἰταλία, *f.*
 at the height, ἐν ἀκμῇ
 power, δύνη
 get the upper hand, περιγγυομαι,
Gen.

sometimes, ἐνίστε
 ample, ἵκανός
 Pyrrhus, Πύρρος, -ον

Exercise 158.

subdue, καταστρέφομαι
 reap fruit, κομίζω τοὺς καρπούς
 elect, αἱρέομαι, χειροτογέω

Exercise 159.

Pericles, Περικλῆς, -έους
 contest, διμήλλα, *J.*
 Susa, Σοῦσα, -ων, *n.*
 like, δημοτος

Exercise 160.

skillfully, ἐπιστημόνως
 meet, ἀπαντάω, *Dat.*
 contest, ἀγών, -ῶνος, *m.*

Exercise 161.

it is plain that, use personal con-
 struction—δῆλός είμι with Par-
 ticle
 be badly treated, κακῶς πάσχω

Exercise 162.

ordain, κελεύω
 imprison, καταδέω
 try, bring to trial, καθίστημι *els*
 κρίσιν (in Passive sense use in-
 transitive tenses)
 property is confiscated, τὰ κτήματα
 δημόσια γίγνεται, ἐστί (lit. be-
 come public property)
 be in vehement haste, λίαν ἐπείγο-
 μαι

put off, ἀναβάλλω
 to-morrow, ή αὔριον (sc. ήμέρα)
 annul, καταλύω
 too late, δψέ
 repent, μεταμέλει (impers.), *Dat.*
 in the past, ἐν τῷ παρελθόντι χρόνῳ
 think, deem, ἀξίω
 crown, στέφανος, *m.*
 at least, however that may be,
 δ' οὖν
 decide, come to a decision, διακρι-
 νομαι
 way, manner, τρόπος

Exercise 163.

be dissatisfied with, χαλεπῶς φέρω,
Acc.
present condition of affairs, τὰ
παρόντα
reflect, φροντίζω, ἐνθυμέομαι

Exercise 164.

be discontented, δεινὸν ποιέομαι
officers (general word), οἱ ἀρχοντες
divulge, μηνῶ
explain, ἔξηγέομαι
frontier, δρός, *m.*

Exercise 165.

in answer, ὑπολαβών
Tissaphernes, Τισταφέρνης, -ους
outray, κραυγή, *f.*
cause, αἰτία, *f.*
Arcadian, Ἀρκάς, -άδος
cry out, βοάω
be better than, διαφέρω, *Gen.*
stratagem, craft, δόλος, *m.*

Exercise 166.

clever at, δεινός, *Inf.*
be unable, not be in a position to,
οὐκ ἔχω, *Inf.*; οὐχ οἶστε εἰμι, *Inf.*

Exercise 167.

'bring up, τρέφω
politics, τὰ τῆς πόλεως πράγματα
generous, high-minded, ἐλευθέριος
convict of, ἐλέγχω, with *Gen.* or
Participle
treachery, προδοσία, *f.*
mercenary, μισθοφόρος, *m.*
mercenary force, τὸ ξενικόν
ride, ἐλαύνω
discuss, settle, διακρίνομαι περὶ,
Gen.
scatter (trans.), διασκεδάννυμι;
(intrans.), διασπείρομαι (or Passive of διασκεδάννυμι)

Exercise 168.

take up position, intransitive
tenses of καθίστημι
centre, τὸ μέσον
on the flank, κατὰ κέρας
break (a line), παραρρήγνυμι
eagerness, ardour, σπουδή, *f.*
catch sight of, καθοράω
throng, δχλος, *m.*
furiously, recklessly, προπετῶς
hurl (from horse), κατακυλίνδω
(tenses as if from κατακυλίζω)
with eight others, say 'himself
the ninth'

Exercise 169.

retreat before, ὑπεξήρχομαι, Acc.
ambush, ἐνέδρα, *f.*
be encouraged, θαρρέω
in the presence of, over against,
ἐναντίον, *Gen.*
arrange a line of battle, παρα-
τάσσομαι, ἀντιτάσσομαι
archer, τοξότης, -ου, *m.*
light-armed troops, πελτασταῖ
(from πελταστής, -οῦ) ψιλοί

Exercise 170.

well, φρέαρ, -ατος, *n.*
prefer, προιρέομαι
negotiate with, πρύσσειν πρός,
Acc.
forgoeth, ἄρα, δῆτα
laugh to scorn, καταγλάω, *Gen.*
be a laughing-stock, καταγλαστός
εἷμι
nay, use μᾶλλον δὲ

Exercise 171.

to be reasonable, *εἰκὸς εἶναι*
 despatch, *ἀποστέλλω*
 burdensome, *ἐπαχθῆς, -ές*
 be abroad, away from home, *ἀπόδημέω*
 spend (of time), *διάγω*
 attach, add, *προστίθημι*
 be sufficient, *ἀποχράω* (*Inf.* *ἀποχρῆν*;
 sea-coast, *παραλία, f.*
 Macedonian, *Μακεδονικός*
 summer, *θέρος, -ους, n.*
 dismiss (from one's thoughts), *έλω*
 for the moment, *πρὸς τὸ παρόν*
 unpleasant, *δυσχερῆς, -ές*
 necessary, *ἐπιτήδειος*
 crisis, *καιρός, m.*
 be proud of, *σεμνύνομαι ἐπί, Dat.*
Dat.
 briefly, *διὰ βράχέων*
 famed, *ἐπιφανῆς, -ές*
 world, use γῇ
 risk, *παραβάλλομαι*
 the ends of the world, *τὰ ἔσχατα τῆς γῆς*
 be slothful, *ράθυμέω*
 hire, *μισθόμαι* (*mid.*)
 shame, *αἰσχύνη*

Exercise 172.

(direct) assault, *προσβολή*
 immense (of number), *ἀναρίθμητος*
 cold, *ψῦχος, -ους, n.*
 befall, *συμβαίνει* (*impers.*), *Dat.*
 support life, *τὴν ἀναγκαῖον τροφήν παρέχειν*
 be in danger, run risk of, *κινδυνεύω, Inf.*
 deprive of, *ἀποστέρεω*
 organise, *συσκευάζω*

Exercise 173.

draw up, haul up, *ἀνέλκω*
 badly, poorly, *φαύλως*
 shrink from, *ἀποκνέω, Inf.*
 be in adversity, *δυστυχέω*
 those at home, *οἱ οἰκοι*

Exercise 174.

more than from any other place,
εἰ καὶ ἄλλοθεν
 height, *ἄκρον, n.*
 with one assault, *μιᾷ ὥρῃ*
 bivouac, *αὐλίζομαι*
 each time, *έκαστοτε*
 resolutely, *θαρραλέως*
 low-lying, *πεδινός*
 marshy, *λιμνωδῆς, -ές*
 bring to terms, *ἀναγκάζειν περὶ ἀπαλλαγῆς πράστειν*
 single, *ἀπλοῦς, -ή, -οῦν*
 build a wall round a city, *πόλιν ἀποτειχίζειν (τείχει)*
 properly, *ἐπιεικῶς*
 merchant ship, *όλκάς, -άδος, f.*

Exercise 175.

Egypt, *Αἴγυπτος, -ου, f.*
 grief, *πένθος, -ους, n.*
 utmost, *ἔσχατος*
 bring upon, *ἐμβάλλω, Acc. of thing, Dat. of person*
 scarcely, *μόλις*
 family, *οἰκος*
 sit out, *παρασκευάζω*
 battle by sea, *ναυμαχία, f.*
 moment, *καιρός*
 put back to shore, *κατάγομαι* (*Passive of κατάγω = bring to shore*).

APPENDICES

I.

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS--PROSE FORMS.

Where the parts of a Compound Verb are not given, they will be found under the Simple Verb.

Present.	Future.	Aorist.	Perf. Act.	Pftr. Pass. ¹	Aor. Pass.
ἀγγέλλω, announce	ἀγγελῶ	ἡγγειλα	ἡγγελκα	ἡγγελμαι	ἡγγέλθην
ἀγέρω, collect		ἡγειρα			ἡγέρθην
ἄγω, lead	ἄξω	ἡγαγον	ἡχα ¹	ἡγμαι	ἡχθην
αἱρέω, take	αἱρήσω	εἴλον	ὑρηκα	ὑρίμαι	ὑρέθην
αἴρω, raise, start	ἀρω	ηρα	ηρκα	ηρμαι	ηρθην
αἰσθάνομαι, perceive	αἰσθήσομαι	ἡσθύμην		ἡσθημαι	
αἰσχύνομαι, am ashamed	αἰσχυνοῦμαι				ἡσχύνθην
ἀκούω, hear	ἀκοίσομαι	ηκουσα	ἀκήκοα		ἡκούσθην
ἀλλοκομαι, am caught	ἀλώσομαι	εάλων	εάλωκα		
ἄλλομαι, leap	ἀλοῦμαι	ηλάμειν	[Strong Aor. in other moods]	ηλωκα	
ἀμαρτάνω, be mis- taught	ἀμαρτήσομαι	ημαρτον	ημάρτηκα	ημάρτημαι	ημαρτήθην
ἀμύνω, defend	ἀμυνω	ημυνα			
ἀναλισκω, spend	ἀναλώσω	ἀνήλωσα	ἀνήλωκα	ἀνήλωμαι	ἀνηλάθην
ἀνέχομαι, endure	ἀνέξομαι	ηνεσχήμην			
ἀνοίγω, open	ἀνοιξω	ἀνέψεα		ἀνέψημαι	ἀνεψχθην
ἀπαντάω, meet	ἀπαντήσομαι	ἀπήντησα	ἀπήντηκα		
ἀπεχθάνομαι, am hit	ἀπεχθήσομαι	ἀπηχθόμην		ἀπήχθημαι	
ἀποκρίνομαι, answer	ἀποκρινοῦμαι	ἀπεκρινάμην		ἀποκέκριμαι	
αἰδίζομαι, encamp		ηδλισθήμην			ηδλισθην
αὐξάνω, } increase	αἰξήσω	ηδξησα	ηδξηκα	ηδξημαι	ηδξηθην

¹ Only in compounds συν- and προ-

Present.	Future.	Aorist.	Perf. Act.	Perf. Pass.	Aor. Pass.
ἀφικνόμαι, <i>arrive</i>	ἀφίξομαι	ἀφικθην		ἀφῆγμαι	
βαίνω, <i>go</i>	βήσομαι	ἔβην ¹	βέβηκα		
βάλλω, <i>throw</i>	βαλῶ	ἔβαλον	βέβληκα	βέβλημαι	ἔβλήθην
βούλομαι, <i>wish</i>	βουλήσομαι			βεβουλήημαι	ἔβουλήθην
γαμέω, <i>marry</i> ²	γαμῶ	ἔγημα	γεγάμηκα	γεγάμημαι	
γίγνομαι, <i>become</i>	γενήσομαι	ἔγενθην	γέγονα	γεγένημαι	
γνωστκω, <i>ascertain</i>	γνώσομαι	ἔγνων ³	ἔγνωκα	ἔγνωσμαι	ἔγνώσθην
δάκνω, <i>bite</i>	δήξομαι	ἔδακον		δέδηγμαι	ἔδήχθην
δεῖκνυμι, <i>show</i>	δείξω	ἔδειξα	δέδειχα	δέδειγμαι	ἔδείχθην
δέχομαι, <i>receive</i>	δέξομαι	ἔδεξάμην		δέδεγμαι	
δέομαι, <i>need, ask</i>	δεήσομαι			δέδέημαι	ἔδείθην
δεῖ, it is necessary	δεήσει	ἔδέησε			
δέω, <i>want, lack</i>	δεήσω	ἔδέησα			
δέω, <i>bind</i>	δήσω	ἔδησα	δέδεκα	δέδεμαι	ἔδέθην
διαλέγομαι, <i>converse</i>	διαλέξομαι			διείλεγμαι	διελέχθην
διαφθείρω, <i>destroy</i>	διαφθερῶ	διέφθειρα	διέφθαρκα	διεφθαρμαι	διεφθάρην
διδάσκω, <i>teach</i>	διδάξω	ἔδιδαξα	δεδίδαχα	δεδίδαγμαι	ἔδιδάχθην
διδώμι, <i>give</i>	διδώσω	ἔδωκα	δέδωκα	δέδομαι	ἔδόθην
δοκέω, <i>seem</i>	δόξω	ἔδοξα		δέδοκται	
δύναμαι, <i>can</i>	δυνήσομαι			δεδύνημαι	ἔδυνήθην
δύω, <i>dip, sink</i> (tr.)	δύσω (tr.)	ἔδυσα (tr.)	δέδυκα (tr.)	δέδυμαι	ἔδύθην
		ἔδυν (intr.)	(intr.)		
έδω, <i>allow</i>	έάσω	είασα	είακα	είαμαι	είάθην
έγειρω, <i>arouse</i>	έγερῶ	ήγειρα	ήγρήγορα (intr.)		ήγέρθην
ἴθλω, <i>wish</i>	ἴθελήσω	ἴθελησα	ἴθεληκα		
έργω, <i>imprison, prevent</i>	έρξω	είρξα		είργμαι	είρχθην
έκπλήσσω, <i>terrify</i>	έκπλήξω	ἔκπληξα		έκπέπληγμαι	έξεπλάγηρ
έλασσω, <i>drive</i>	έλω	ηλασσα	έληλακα	έληλαμαι	ήλάθην
έλεγχω, <i>convict</i>	έλέγξω	ηλεγξα		έληλεγμαι	ήλεγχθην

¹ The moods are ἔβην, βῆθι, βῶ, βαίνω, βήσαι, βάσις.

² Act. γαμῶ γνωσκα, μένο υπορετ; Mid. γαμέσαι ἀνδρί, πιβο τιρο.

³ The moods are ἔγνων, γνωθι, γνῶ, γνοίην, γνῶναι, γνοῦσι.

Present.	Future.	Aorist.	Perf. Act.	Perf. Pass.	Aor. Pass.
ἔλκω, <i>drag</i>	ἔλξω	ἔλκνσα	ἔλκυκα	ἔλκνσμαι	ἔλκύσθη
ἐναντιώματι, ὥροσε	ἐναντιώσομαι			ἐναντίωμαι	ἐναντιώθη
ἐπαινέω, <i>praise</i>	ἐπαινέσομαι	ἐπήνεσα	ἐπήγεκα		ἐπηγέθη
ἐπίλανθάνομαι, <i>forgive</i>	ἐπιλήσομαι	ἐπελαθόμην		ἐπιλέλησμαι	
ἐπισταμαι, <i>understand</i>	ἐπιστήσομαι				ἐπιστήθη
ἐπομαι, <i>follow</i>	ἐψομαι	ἐσπόμην			
ἐρωτάω, <i>ask, question</i>	ἐρωτήσω	ἡρώτησα	ἡρώτηκα	ἡρώτημαι	ἡρωτήθη
	ἐρήσομαι	ἡρώμην			
ἐργάζομαι, <i>work</i>	ἐργάσομαι	εἰργασάμην		εἰργασμαι	εἰργάσθη
ἐρχομαι, <i>go, come</i>	ἔλμι	ῆλθον	εἰλήλευθα		
ἴσθιω, <i>sit</i>	ἴδομαι	ἴφαγον			
εὐλαβοῦμαι, <i>be ware</i>	εὐλαβήσομαι				εὐλαβήθη
εὑρίσκω, <i>find</i>	εὑρήσω	εὗρον	εὕρηκα	εὕρημαι	εὑρέθη
ἔχω, <i>have</i>	ἔξω	ἔσχον	ἔσχηκα	ἔσχημαι	
	σχήσω				
ζάω, <i>live</i>	βιώσομαι	ἰβίων	βιβίωκα		
ἥδομαι, <i>rejoice, am pleased</i>	ἥσθισομαι				ἥσθη
ἥκω, <i>am come</i>	ἥξω				
θάπτω, <i>bury</i>	θάψω	θαψά		τέθαμμαι	τέθαψη
θαυμάζω, <i>wonder (at)</i>	θαυμάσομαι	θαυμάσσα	τεθαύ- μακα	τεθαύμασ- μαι	θαυμάσθη
θυγόσκω, <i>lie</i>	-θανοῦμαι	-θανον	τέθνηκα		
ἴημι, <i>send, let go</i>	ἴσω	ἴκα	εἴκα		εἴθη
	εἴμην				
ἴστημι, <i>place (tr.)</i>	στήσω (tr.)	ἴστησα (tr.)	ἴστηκα	ἴσταμαι	ἴστάθη
	ἴστην (intr.)				
καίω, <i>burn</i>	καίσω	ἴκαυσα	κέκαυκα	κέκαυμαι	κέκαύθη
καλέω, <i>call</i>	καλῶ	ἴκάλεσα	κέκληκα	κέκλημαι	κέκληθη
κάμω, <i>toil</i>	καμοῦμαι	ἴκαμον	κέκμηκα		
καταγελάω, <i>scorn, laugh at</i>	καταγελάσο- μαι	κατεγέλασα			κατεγελάσθη
κεῖμαι, <i>lie</i>	κεῖσομαι				
κελεύω, <i>bid</i>	κελεύσω	ἴκέλευσα	κεκέλευκα	κεκέλευσμαι	κεκέλευσθη
κλαίω, <i>weep</i>	κλαίσομαι	ἴκλαυσα		κέκλαυμαι	
κλέπτω, <i>steal</i>	κλέψω	ἴκλεψα	κέκλοφα	κέκλεμμαι	κέκλαπη

Present.	Future.	Aorist.	Perf. Act.	Perf. Pass.	Aor. Pass.
κομίζω, <i>convey, bring</i>	κομιῶ	ἐκβούστα	κεκβυκα	κεκβυσμαι	ἐκομίσθην
κρίνω, <i>judge</i>	κρινῶ	ἐκρινα	κέκρικα	κέκριμαι	ἐκρίθην
κτάσμαι, <i>get, obtain</i>	κτήσομαι	ἐκτησάμην		κέκτημαι	ἐκτήθην
κτείνω, <i>kill</i>	-κτενῶ	-ἐκτεινα	-ἔκτονα		
λαμβάνω, <i>take</i>	λήψομαι	ἔλαβον	εἰληφα	εἰλημμαι	ἐλήφθην
λανθάνω, <i>lie hid, escape notice</i>	λήσω	ἔλαθον	λέληθα		
λέγω, <i>say</i>	{ λέξω ἔρω	{ ἐλέξα εἴπον, εἴπα	{ εἰρηκα	εἰρημαι	{ ἐλέχθην ἔρρηθην
ἀγαρέω, <i>say</i>					
φημι, <i>say</i>					
λείπω, <i>leave</i>	λείψω	ἔλιπον	λέλοιπα	λέλειμμαι	ἐλείφθην
μανθάνω, <i>learn</i>	μαθήσομαι	ἔμαθον	μεμάθηκα		
μάχομαι, <i>fight</i>	μαχοῦμαι	ἔμαχεσάμην		μεμάχημαι	
μέλει, <i>concern</i> (Imper. s.)	μελήσει	ἔμέλησε	μεμέληκε		
μέλλω, <i>am about to</i>	μελλήσω	ἔμέλλησα			
μέμφομαι, <i>blame</i>	μέμφομαι	ἔμεμφάμην			
μένω, <i>remain</i>	μενῶ	ἔμεινα			
(ἄνα) μανήσκω, <i>re-</i> <i>turn</i>	-μνήσω	-ἔμνησα		μέμνημαι (I re- member)	ἐμνήσθην (I re- membered)
νέω, <i>sow</i>					
νομίζω, <i>think, con-</i> <i>sider</i>	νεύσομαι	ἔνευσα	νένευκα		
	νομιῶ	ἔνδυμσα	νενδύμικα	νενδύμισμαι	ἐνομίσθην
οἶδα, <i>know</i>	εἰσομαι				
οἴσμαι, <i>think</i>	{ οἰήσομαι				ψήθην
οἴμαι, <i>think</i>					
οἴχομαι, <i>am gone</i>	οἰχήσομαι				
(ἀπ') -ολλυμι, <i>de-</i> <i>stroy, lose</i>	-ολῶ	-ώλεσα	-ολώλεκα		
		-ωλόμην	-δλωλα (intr.)		
δμνυμι, <i>shear</i>	δμοῦμαι	ῶμοσα	δμώμοκα		
δξύνω, <i>sharpen</i>	δξινῶ	ῶξινα	δξυγκα	δξυμμαι	ῶξινθην
ὑράω, <i>see</i>	δψομαι	είδον	έώρακα	έώραμαι	ῶφθην
				ῶμμαι	
ὁργίζομαι, <i>become</i> <i>angry</i>	δργιοῦμαι			ῶργισμαι	ῶργισθην
ὑρμάομαι, <i>start</i>	ὑρμήσομαι			ῶρμημαι	ῶρμήθην

Present.	Future.	Aorist.	Perf. Act.	Perf. Pass.	Aor. Pass.
ὁρμίζω, <i>moor</i> (tr.)		ῷρμιστα		ῷρμισμαι	ῷρμισθην
ὁρμίζομαι, <i>moor</i> (in-trans.)	ὁρμισθαι	ῷρμισάμην		ῷρμισμαι	ῷρμισθην
ὑφελώ, <i>owe</i>		ῳφελον			
ὑφίσικάνω, <i>incur charge of</i>	ῳφλήσω	ῳφλον	ῳφληκα		
παῖω, } <i>strike</i>	παῖσω	ἴπαισα		πέπληγμαι	ἐπλήγην
	πατάξω	ἴπαταξα			-
παρανέω, <i>advice see ἐπανέω</i>					
παρέχω, <i>provide</i>	παρέξω	παρέσχον	παρέσχη	παρέσχημαι	
	παρασχήσω		κα	(Middle)	
πάσχω, <i>suffer</i>	πείσομαι	ἔπαθον	πέπονθα		
πείθω, <i>persuade</i>	πείσω	ἔπιστα	πέπεικα	πέπεισμαι	ἐπείσθην
		ἔπιθον	(tr.)		
		ἔπιθμην	πέποιθα	(intr.)	
πέμπω, <i>send</i>	πέμψω	ἔπειμψα	πέπομφα	πέπεμμαι	ἐπέμφθην
πέτομαι, <i>fly</i>	πτήσομαι	ἔπτημην			
πίμπλημι, <i>fill</i>	πλήσω	ἔπλησα	πέπληκα	πέπλησμαι	ἐπλήσθην
πίπτω, <i>fall</i>	πεσοῦμαι	ἴπισον	πέπτωκα		
πλέω, <i>sail</i>	πλεύσομαι	ἔπλευσα	πέπλευκα		
πράσσω, <i>do</i> (tr.)	πράξω	ἔπραξα	πέπραχα	πέπραγμαι	ἐπράχθην
<i>fare</i> (intr.)			πέπραγα		
			(intr.)		
πυνθάνομαι, <i>ascertain</i>	πείσομαι	ἔπυθμην		πέπνυσμαι	
<i>tain</i>					
πωλέω, } <i>sell</i>	πωλήσω	ἔπωλησα	πέπρακα	πέπραμαι	ἐπράθην
	ἀποδίδομαι,	ἀπεδόμην	ἀπεδόμην		
ρήγνυμι, <i>break</i>	ρήξω	ἔρρηξα	ἔρρωγα		ἐρράγην
			(intr.)		
ῥίπτω, <i>thrust</i> , <i>hurl</i>	ῥίψω	ἔρριψα	ἔρριφα	ἔρριμμαι	ἐρριψθην
σκεδάννυμι, <i>scatter</i>	σκεδῶ	ἔσκεδασα		ἔσκεδασμαι	ἐσκεδάσθην
σπείρω, <i>sow</i>	σπερῶ	ἔσπειρα	ἔσπαρκα	ἔσπαρμαι	ἐσπάρην
σπινδομαι, <i>make peace</i>	σπείσομαι	ἴσπεισάμην		ἴσπεισμαι	
σπουδάξω, <i>am busy</i>	σπονδάσομαι	ἴσπονδασα	ἴσπονδα-	ἴσπονδασμαι	ἴσπονδάσθην

Present.	Future.	Aorist.	Perf. Act.	Perf. Pass.	Aor. Pass.
στέλλω, <i>equir</i>	στιλῶ	ἐστελα		ἐσταλμαι	ἐστάλην
στρέφω, <i>turn</i>	στρέψω	ἐστρεψα		ἐστραμμαι	ἰστράφην
σφάλλω, <i>cause to slip</i>	σφαλῶ	ἐσφῆλα		ἐσφαλμαι	ἐσφάλην
σώζω, <i>savie</i>	σώσω	ἐσωσα	σώσωκα	σέσῳπμαι	ἐσώθην
τελέω, <i>accomplish</i>	τελῶ	ἐτέλεσα	τετέλεκα	τετέλεσμαι	ἐτελέσθην
τέμνω, <i>cut</i>	τεμῶ	ἐτέμον	τέτμηκα	τέτμημαι	ἐτμήθην
τίθημι, <i>place</i>	θήσω	ἐθηκα	τέθηκα	[κείμαι]	ἐτέθην
		ἐθέμην			
τιτρώσκω, <i>wound</i>	τρώσω	ἐτρωσα		τέτρωμαι	ἐτρώθην
τλάω, <i>entice</i>	τλήσομαι	ἐτλην	τέτληκα		
τρέπω, <i>turn, roul</i>	τρέψω	ἐτρεψα	τέτροφα	τέτραμμαι	ἐτράπην
		ἐτραπήμην			
τρέψω, <i>nourish</i>	θρέψω	ἐθρεψα	τέτροφα	τέθραμμαι	ἐτράψην
τρέχω, } run	δραμοῦμαι	ἐδραμον	{ δεδρά- μηκα		
θέω, }					
τυγχάνω, <i>hit, happen</i>	τείχομαι	ἐτυχον	τετύχηκα		
ὑποσχνέομαι, <i>promise</i>	ὑποσχήσομαι	ὑπεσχόμην		ὑπέσχημαι	
φαίνω, <i>show</i>	φανῶ	ἐφηνα	πέφαγκα (tr.)	πέφασμαι	ἐφάνθην
			πέφηνα (intr.)		ἐφάνην
φερώ, <i>carry, bear</i>	οἴσω	ἠμεγκον ἠμεγκα	ἐνήνοχα	ἐνήρεγμαι	ἡνέχθην
φεύγω, <i>flee</i>	φεύξομαι	ἐφυγον	πέφευγα		
φημι, <i>see λέγω</i>					
φθάνω, <i>anticipate</i>	φθήσομαι	ἐφθασα ἐφθην	τέφθακα		
φοβέομαι, <i>fear</i>	φοβήσομαι			πεφθημαι	ἐφοβήθην
χαιρώ, <i>rejoice</i>	χαιρήσω				
χράομαι, <i>use</i>	χρήσομαι	ἐχρησάμην		κέχρημαι	ἐχρήσθην
χρή, <i>it is necessary</i>	χρήσει	Past. χρῆν ἐχρῆν			
Inf. χρήγαι					
ψεύδω, <i>deceive</i> (Middle—lie)	ψεύσω	ἐψευσα		ἐψευσμαι	ἐψεύσθην
ἀνέομαι, <i>buy</i>	ἀνήσομαι	ἐπριάμην		ἐώνημαι	ἐωνήθην

COMPOUNDS OF COMMON VERBS

ἄγω, lead.

εἰσάγω, introduce, import.

ἀνάγω, (1) lead from coast to interior.

(2) take to sea (Middle, put out to sea).

κατάγω, (1) lead down to coast.

(2) bring to land.

(3) bring back from exile.

προσάγω, (1) (mil.) bring up to attack (Dat. or πρός with Acc.).

(2) Middle, bring over to one's side.

αἱρέω, take (Middle, choose).

ἀφαιρέομαι, take away, steal (double Acc.).

καθαιρέω, destroy (esp. to raze a city).

ἀναιρέομαι, recover (esp. take up doul for burial).

βαίνω, go.

ἀναβαίνω, (1) go up from coast.

(2) mount a horse; *ἀναβαίνειν εἰφ' ἵππου*

ἐμβαίνω εἰς ναῦν, embark.

ἐκβαίνω (or ἀποβαίνω) ἐκ νεώς, disembark.

διαβαίνω, cross (a river).

ὑπερβαίνω, cross (a mountain).

**ἀποβαίνω (of things), turn out; ταῦτα κυλῶς ἀπέβη.*

συμβαίνω, come to terms. Impersonally, come about, happen.

βάλλω, throw.

εἰσβάλλω εἰς, invade.

προσβάλλω, attack (Dat.).

περιβάλλω (gen. in Middle), surround. For Passive use περιπίπτω.

e.g. *νῆσον τείχει* } *περιβάλλεσθαι.*
or *τείχος νῆσῳ* }

διαβάλλω, set at variance, slander.

μεταβάλλω, change.

ἐκβάλλω, banish. For Passive use ἐκπίπτω.

παραβάλλομαι, risk, hazard.

γίγνομαι, become.

ἐπιγίγνομαι, (of time) follow; τοῦ ἐπιγιγνομένου ἔτους.

περιγίγνομαι, survive, get the better of (Gen.).

προσγίγνομαι, be added, join (Dat.).

γιγνώσκω, get to know.

ἀναγιγνώσκω, read.

καταγιγνώσκω, condemn (Gen. of person, Acc. of crime or penalty).

συγγιγνώσκω, pardon (Dat.).

μεταγιγνώσκω, change one's mind, repent.

δίδωμι, give.

ἀποδίδωμι, give back (Middle, sell).

παραδίδωμι, hand over, surrender (trans.).

προδίδωμι, betray.

ἐνδίδωμι (intr.), surrender, give in.

ἐκδίδωμι, give in marriage.

μεταδίδωμι, give a share of (Gen.).

ἔρχομαι, come. (*ἔρχομαι* and its Compounds have εἰμι for Future and ἦν for Imperfect.)

ἀπέρχομαι, go away, go back.

συνέρχομαι, assemble.

διέρχομαι, go through, traverse (of time, elapse).

ἐπανέρχομαι, return.

κατέρχομαι, come back from exile.

ἔπειμι, attack, charge (Dat.).

προσέρχομαι πρός, approach.

παρέρχομαι, πάρειμι, come forward (of a speaker).

ἔχω, have.

ἀπέχω, κατέχω, } restrain. (p. 160.)

ἀπέχω (intr.), be distant from (Gen. or ἀπό with Gen.).

ἀπέχομαι, refrain. (p. 160.)

κατέχω, keep.

ἀνέχομαι, hold out, endure (with Part.).

ἀντέχω, hold out (Intrans.) ; ἀντέχομαι, cling to (Gen.).

ἐπέχω, wait.

μετέχω, have a share of (Gen.).

παρέχω, supply (παρέχει μοι, I have an opportunity).

περιέχω, surround.

προσέχω (τὸν νοῦν), attend to (Dat.).

ἀπέμι, *send, let go.*

ἀφίημι, *dismiss, let go.*

μεθίημι, *let slip ; e.g. μεθίημι καιρόν.* Mid., *let go of* (Gen.).
συνίημι, *understand.*

ἐφίεμαι, *aim at, desire* (Gen.).

ἰστημι, *set up, place.* *Transitive tenses, Pres., Imp., Fut., Wk. Aor.*

Intransitive tenses, Str. Aor., Perf., Plup.

ἀφίστημι, *make to revolt.*

(intr. tenses and Mid.), *revolt.*

καθίστημι, *set up, appoint.*

(intr. tenses and Mid.), *be appointed.*

ἔξιστημι (with *φρενῶν* or *τοῦ φρονεῖν* or abs.), *drive out of wits.*

(intr. tenses and Mid.), *depart from, cease from* (Gen.), or *to be out of one's wits.*

μεθίστημι, *change, remove.*

(intr. tenses and Mid.), *change, revolt.*

ἐφίστημι (intr. tenses and Mid.) *be in command of* (Dat.).

ἀνθίστημι (intr. tenses and Mid.), *resist* (Dat.)

ὑφίστημι (intr. tenses and Mid.), (1) *undertake, promise.*

(2) *hold one's ground, resist.*

λαμβάνω, *take.* Mid., *cling to, lay hold of* (Gen.).

καταλαμβάνω, *overtake, come upon ; e.g. κατέλαβον ἀποροῦντας,*
they found them in distress.

συλλαμβάνω, *arrest, seize.*

Ὄπολαμβάνω, *answer* (gen. in Aor. Part with verb of *saying*).

τίθημι, *place.* [Passive often *κείμαι* and compounds.]

διατίθημι, *settle, dispose of.*

προστίθημι, *add.*

ἐπιτίθεμαι, *attack* (Dat.).

συντίθεμαι, *make an agreement.*

ὑποτίθεμαι, *suggest, advise* (Dat.).

φέρω, *bring.*

διαφέρω, *differ from, be superior to* (Gen.).

ἐπιφέρω πολέμου, *wage war on* (Dat.).

προσφέρω, *apply, use ; προσφέρω βίαν τινί.*

συμφέρει, *it is expedient* (Dat.).

APPENDIX III.
COMMON PROSE USAGES
OF PREPOSITIONS

WITH ONE CASE

	ACCUSATIVE.	GENITIVE.	DATIVE.
ἀνά	ἀνὰ ποταμόν, <i>up stream.</i> ἀνὰ πᾶσαν τὴν ἡμέραν, <i>all day long.</i> ἀνὰ τρεῖς, <i>by threes (three deep).</i>		
εἰς	εἰσέβαλον εἰς τὴν Ἀττικήν, <i>they invaded Attica.</i> εἰς καιρόν, <i>at the right time.</i> εἰς διακοσίους, <i>up to two hundred.</i> εἰς τόδε ἥκω, <i>I have come for this purpose.</i>		
ὡς	ἐπέμφθη ὡς τὸν βασιλέα, <i>he was sent to the king (only used of persons).</i>		
ἀντὶ		εἰρήνην ἔχομει ἀντὶ πολέμου, <i>we have peace instead of war.</i>	

	ACCUSATIVE.	GENITIVE.	DATIVE.
ἀπό		ἀπὸ τῆς βαρβάρου ἡλθεν, <i>he came from the foreign country.</i>	
		ἀπ' ἐκείνης τῆς ἡμέρας, <i>from that day.</i>	
		ἀφ' ἵππου μάχεσ- θαι, <i>to fight on horseback.</i>	
ἐκ		ἐκ Σπάρτης φεύγει, <i>he is banished from Sparta.</i>	
		ἐκ τούτων, <i>after this.</i>	
		οἱ ἐκ δεξιᾶς, <i>those on the right.</i>	
		ἐξ ἴσον, <i>equally.</i>	
πρό		πρὸ θυρῶν, <i>before the door.</i>	
		πρὸ τῆς μάχης, <i>be- fore the battle.</i>	
ἐν			ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις, <i>in Athens.</i>
			ἐν τοῖς Πέρσαις, <i>among the Per- sians.</i>
			ἐν τούτῳ, <i>mean- while.</i>
			ἐν καιρῷ, <i>at the right time.</i>
			ἐν σπονδαῖς, <i>in a time of truce.</i>

	ACCUSATIVE.	GENITIVE.	DATIVE.
σὺν			σὺν ἡμῖν, in company with us. [Not in Attic till Xenophon.]

WITH TWO CASES

	ACCUSATIVE.	GENITIVE.
διὰ		διὰ τῆς χώρας πορεύονται, <i>they march through the country.</i>
		διὰ πολλοῦ, <i>at a great distance.</i> after a long time.
		διὰ πέντε ἔτῶν, <i>every five years.</i>
		διὰ φιλίας λέναι, <i>to be on friendly terms.</i>
	διὰ τοῦτο φεύγει, <i>he is exiled on account of this.</i> Lat. propter.	διὰ ἀγγέλου λέγειν, <i>to speak by means of a messenger.</i> Lat. per.
	διὰ πολλά, <i>for many reasons.</i>	διὰ τύχους, <i>quickly.</i>
κατά	κατὰ ποταμόν, <i>down stream.</i> κατὰ γῆν καὶ θάλασσαν, <i>by land and sea.</i>	τὰ κατὰ γῆς, <i>things below the earth.</i>
	κατὰ δύναμιν, <i>to the best of one's ability.</i>	κατὰ πέτρας πεσεῖν, <i>to fall from a rock.</i>
	κατὰ τοὺς νόμους, <i>in accordance with the laws.</i>	κατὰ τῆς κεφαλῆς καταχεῖν, <i>to pour on the head.</i>
	τὸ κατ' ἐμέ, <i>as far as I am concerned.</i>	λέγειν κατά τυρος, <i>to speak against some one.</i>
	καθ' ἡμέραν, <i>daily, day by day.</i>	πόλιν κατ' ἄκρας διαφθεῖραι, <i>to destroy a city utterly.</i>

	ACCUSATIVE.	GENITIVE.
κατὰ	κατὰ Πίνδαρον, according to Pindar (in quotation). πόλιν ἐλεῦν κατὰ κράτος, to take a city by storm.	
ὑπέρ	ὑπὲρ Αἴγυπτον ιόντι, to one going beyond Egypt. ὑπέρ δύναμιν, beyond one's power.	λιμὴν καὶ πόλις ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ, a harbour and a city above it. μάχεσθαι ὑπὲρ τῆς πατρίδος, to fight for one's country.

WITH THREE CASES

	ACCUSATIVE.	GENITIVE.	DATIVE.
ἐπί	ἐπὶ τοὺς πολε- μίους, against or towards the enemy. τὸ ἐπ’ ἐμέ, so far as depends on me. ὡς ἐπὶ τῷ πολύ, for the most part.	ἐπὶ τῆς τραπέζης, upon the table. ἐπὶ τῆς Νάξου, to wards Naxos. ἐφ’ ἵππου, on horse- back. ἐπὶ τοῦ Κύρου, in the time of Cyrus.	ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ, on the sea. χαίρειν ἐπὶ τῇ φι- λίᾳ, to rejoice in friendship. ἐπὶ τούτοις, on these conditions. ἐπὶ τῷ Κύρῳ, in the power of Cyrus.
μετά	μετὰ ταῦτα, after this.	μετὰ τούτων, with these.	(In poetry only).
παρά	παρὰ τὸν βασιλέα, to the king's court. παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν, along the river. παρὰ νόμον, con- trary to the law. παρ' ὅλγον ἀπέ- θανε, he all but died.	παρὰ τοῦ βασι- λέως, from the king, from the king's court.	παρὰ τῷ βασιλεῖ, beside the king, in the presence of the king, at the king's court.

	ACCUSATIVE.	GENITIVE.	DATIVE.
περὶ	περὶ τὴν Ἀττικήν, all round or all over Attica. οἱ περὶ τὸν Κρι- τίαν, Critias and his party. ὅτλίται περὶ ἑκα- τόν, about 100 hoplites. εἶναι περὶ τι, to be engaged on a thing.	περὶ τῆς ὀρετῆς, concerning virtue. περὶ πολλοῦ ποιεῖ- σθαι, to reckon of great importance.	δακτύλιον ἔχειν περὶ τῇ χειρὶ, to have a ring on the singer.
πρὸς	πρὸς τὴν νῆσον, towards or to the island. πρὸς χάριν, with a view to pleasing. πρὸς βίᾳ, forcibly. πρὸς ταῦτα, there- fore (with Im- peratives).	πρὸς τῶν πολε- μίων, from the enemy or (the result was) in favour of the enemy. πρὸς θεῶν, in heaven's name (in appeals).	πρὸς τῷ ποταμῷ, at or near the river. πρὸς τούτοις, in addition to this.
ἐπό-	ἴεναι ἐπὸ τὸ σπή- λαιον, to go down into the cave. ἐπὸ νύκτα, just be- fore or about night.	ἐπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως ἐπράχθη, it was done by the king (agent).	ἐπὸ τῷ τείχει, close under the wall. ποις, subject to men.
ἀμφί	οἱ ἀμφὶ Πρίαμον, Priam and his train. ἀμφὶ τὸν χειμῶνα, about winter.	(In poetry only).	(In poetry only).

Certain Adverbs are also used as Prepositions, and most of these take the Genitive Case, e.g. ἀνεν, without, μέχρι, until, ἐνέκα, on account of, πλήν, except, ἐγγύς and πλησίον, near, μεταξύ, between, ἐντός, ἐνώ, within, ἐκτός, outside of.

The Adverb ἀμά, at the same time as, is followed by a Dative, e.g. ἀμά τῷ ἥρι, at the return of spring. So ὁμοῦ, together with.

APPENDIX IV.

PARTICLES

*Those marked * cannot stand first in a sentence.*

ἄγε δή, φέρε δή, come now, but come.

ἀλλά, but.

οὐ μὴν ἀλλά, not but what, nevertheless.

οὐ μόνον . . . ἀλλὰ καί, not only . . . but also.

οὐχ ὅπως . . . ἀλλὰ καί, not only . . . (not) . . . but also.

ἀλλώς τε καί, especially

ἄρα, generally translated ‘then,’ ‘so then,’ expressing mostly regret and always slight surprise.

e.g. μάτην ἄρ', ὡς ἔοικεν, ἥκορεν.

So then, we have come in rain after all!

ἄρα, interrogative particle.

ἄρ' οὐ; = nonne?

ἄρα μή; = num?

ἄτε (with participles), inasmuch as.

αὖ*, on the other hand, moreover.

γάρ*, for. In Dialogue often translated ‘yes’ or ‘no.’

e.g. ἀγωνιστέον ἄρα ἡμῖν; ἀνάγκη γάρ, εἴη.

Must we then strive? Yes, he said, it is necessary.

γε*, at least.

γοῦν*, at least, at any rate.

πάντα γε, quite so.

γε μήν*, nevertheless, but yet.

δέ*, but, and. Often used like Latin *autem* simply to connect sentences.

δέ οὖν*, however that may be . . ., (ceterum).

δῆ*. It is impossible to give any exact translation of δῆ.

The examples below will explain some of its uses.

τι δῆ; what then, pray what?

νῦν δράτε δῆ, now you surely see.

τότε δῆ, then indeed, at that very time (tum vero).

μέγιστος δῆ, quite *the greatest*, confessedly *the greatest*.

οὗτος δῆ ὁ Σωκράτης, *this Socrates* forsooth (ironical).

μεθ' ὅπλων γε δῆ, above all *with arms*.

βλέψον. *καὶ δῆ βλέπω*, ‘*Look! Well, I am looking.*’

*δῆπου**, *doubtless, I presume*.

*δῆτα** (emphatic form of *δῆ*). In questions=‘*pray*.’

εἴθε, εἰ γάρ, *would that* (used to express wishes, pp. 78 and 176).

ἐφ' ᾧ, ἐφ' ᾧ τε (with Inf. or Fut. Ind.), *on condition that* (p. 100).

ἢ . . . ἢ, either . . . or.

ἢ μήν, used in oaths or solemn protestations.

e.g. *ἔγγυσθαι ἢ μήν παραμενεῖν*.

To undertake solemnly to remain.

καί, and, even, also.

. . . τε . . . καί } *both . . . and* (p. 45).
καὶ . . . καὶ }

καὶ δῆ (to add a remark), ‘*and moreover*,’ ‘*and too*.’

καὶ γάρ, for truly.

καίτοι, however, and yet.

*μέντοι**, *however*.

. . . μέν . . . δέ, on the one hand . . . on the other hand (p. 45).
*μὲν οὖν**, *nay rather* (without *δέ* necessarily following).

μόνον οὐ } *all but*.
ὅσον οὐ }

e.g. *ὅσον οὐ διεφθάρη δ στόλος*.

The expedition was on the point of being destroyed.

οὖτος, however, nevertheless (often *ὅμως δέ* or *ἀλλ' ὅμως, but yet*).

οὐδέ, and not, not even.

οὐτε . . . οὐτε, neither . . . nor.

οὖν, therefore, then*.

οὐκοῦν, therefore.

οὐκούν, lays stress on the negative, ‘not . . . therefore.’

*πού**, *possibly, I suppose*.

*τούτων**, *therefore*.

ὡς (with participles), on the ground that— or to express purpose (pp. 94 and 122).

ὡσπερ (with participles), as if (p. 123).

ὡστε, consequently (p. 100).

APPENDIX V.

THE CHIEF RULES FOR ACCENTS

I. In Greek there are two accents, the Acute (as on *λύγος*) and the Circumflex (as on *πρᾶγμα*).

The Acute accent on the last syllable of a word is changed to the Grave¹ when another word follows, unless that word be an enclitic, in which case the Acute remains.

A word with the Acute on the last syllable is called Oxytone,¹

“	“	“	last syllable but one	„	Paroxytone.
“	“	“	last syllable but two	„	Proparoxytone.
“	“	“	Circumflex on the last syllable	„	Perispomenon. ²
“	“	“	last syllable but one	„	Properispomenon

GENERAL RULES

II. Position of Acute and Circumflex.—The Acute may stand on long or short syllables, the Circumflex only on syllables containing a vowel long by nature or a diphthong.

The Acute may stand on any of the last three syllables, the Circumflex only on the last or last but one. But if the last syllable is long, the Acute cannot stand on the last but two, nor the Circumflex on the last but one.

e.g. *ἄνθρωπος*, but *ἀνθρώπου*, *λῦσον*, *λυθῶ*.

III. In words of which the last syllable is short and the last but one long by nature, if the accent is on the last but one it must be the Circumflex.

e.g. *τεῖχος*, *ποιεῖτε*.

IV. Contracted Syllables have the Circumflex when the *first* of the two syllables was accented.

e.g. *φιλέω*, *φιλῶ*

They have the Acute when the *second* syllable was accented.

e.g. *φιλεέτω*, *φιλείτω*.

¹ ὥξης τόνος=acute tone.

² περισπάω=I draw in different directions.

They are unaccented if neither of the two syllables was accented.

e.g. φίλες, φίλει.

V. Enclitics.

Certain words called Enclitics (*leaning words*) lose their accent through being pronounced in close connection with the preceding word.

Such are—

- (a) All forms of the Indefinite τις.
- (b) The Indefinite adverbs, πως, που, ποτέ, etc.
- (c) The following cases of the Personal Pronouns, με, μου, μοι, σε, σου, σοι, ἐ, οὐ, οἱ.
- (d) The Present Indicative of εἰμί, I am, and φημί, I say (except in the 2nd Pers. Sing.).¹
- (e) The Particles, τε, γε, τοι, νυν, περ.

Rules for Enclitics.

- (a) If the preceding word is proparoxytone or properispomenon, the accent of the enclitic is thrown back as an acute on the last syllable.
e.g. τοῦτο μοι ἔδωκε τις.
- (b) If the preceding word is paroxytone, an enclitic of one syllable loses its accent with no other change, an enclitic of two syllables retains its accent.
e.g. λόγος τις, λόγοι τινές.
- (c) If the preceding word is perispomenon, the enclitic loses its accent without other change; if it is oxytone it retains the acute accent. (See Rule 1.)
e.g. ἀγαθός τις, a certain good man.
οὖσαι τινῶν, of certain roads.
- (d) When several enclitics follow one another, each throws its accent back, so that only the last is unaccented.
e.g. εἴ ποτέ πού τι εἶδον.

¹ The whole present of εἰμί is accented when it denotes *existence*.

The 3rd Pers. Sing. is accented on the first syllable in the following cases:—

- (a) When it denotes *existence*, e.g. οὐκέτι ἔστιν, he is no more.
- (b) In the sense, 'it is possible' where it = εἰδεστι.
- (c) When it begins a sentence.
- (d) After εἰ, καὶ, οὐκ, ως.

VI. Atonics.

A few words have no accent, unless they are followed by an enclitic or stand as the last word of a sentence.

- (a) The nom. of the Article, *δ*, *ἡ*, *οἱ*, *αἱ*.
- (b) *οὐ*, *ὡς* (= *how*).
- (c) *εἰς*, *ἐν*, *ἐκ*, *ὡς* (= *to*).
- (d) *εἰ*, *ὡς* (= *when, as, that*).

VII. Anastrophe (throwing back).

- (a) The disyllabic prepositions throw back their accent to the first syllable when they follow their case (except *ἀμφί*, *ἀντί*, *ἀνά*, *διά*).

e.g. τούτων πέρι, concerning these things.

- (b) Oxytone words, except indeclinable words, become paroxytone when the final vowel is elided.

e.g. δεῖν' ἔπαθε (for *δεινὰ ἔπαθε*),
but *ἐπ' αὐτοῦ*.

ACCENTS ON VERBS.

VIII. (1) Generally the accent stands as far back as possible.

e.g. ἔλυσε, ἔλύθην, λύσαι.

(N.B.—Final syllables in *ai* and *oi* are treated as short except in the Optative.)

e.g. λύσαι (Inf.), *λύσαι* (Opt.).)

- (2) Contracted forms are accented according to Rule IV.

The following are treated as contracted forms :—

- (a) The Subjunctive of all passive aorists.

e.g. λυθῶ, πλακῶ.

- (b) The Subjunctive and Optative of Pres. and Str. Aor. Act. and Mid. of verbs in *-μι* (except in *-νυμι*).

e.g. τιθῶ, τιθεῖμεν, θῶ, θείσθε.

EXCEPTIONS.

- (1) The Str. Aor. is accented on the last syllable in the Inf. and Part. Act. and in the 2nd Sing. of the Imperative Mid., and on the last syllable but one in the Inf. Mid.

e.g. λαβεῖν, λαβών, λαβούστα, λαβόν, λαβοῦ,¹ λαβέσθαι.

¹ But *ἀφίκου*, *ἐπιλάθου*.

(2) The following Str. Aorists are oxytone in the Imperative:—
εἰπέ, ἔλθέ, εὑρέ, ιδέ, λαβέ.

(3) The following parts of verbs are paroxytone if the last syllable but one is short, properispomenon if it is long:—

(a) Wk. Aor. Inf. Act.

e.g. τιμῆσαι, πλέξαι.

(b) All Infinitives in *-ναι*.

e.g. τιθέναι, λελυκέναι, στήναι.

(c) All Infinitives and Participles of the Perf. Pass.

e.g. λελυμένος, τετιμῆσθαι.

(4) All active Participles of verbs in *-μι*, and all others in *-εις* and *-ως* are oxytone.

e.g. τιθείς, λυθείς, λελυκώς.

(5) In compound verbs the accent may not go back:

(a) Beyond the augment.

e.g. παρέσχον, κατῆγον.

(b) Beyond the last syllable of the preposition.¹

e.g. ἀπόδος, ἐπίσχες.

(c) Beyond the verbal part of Infinitives and Participles of verbs in *-μι*.

e.g. ἀποδούς, ἀποδύσθαι.

Or beyond the verbal part of 2nd Sing. Imp. Mid. of verbs in *-μι* compounded with a preposition of one syllable.

e.g. προθοῦ, but μετάδου.

NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

(N.B. *-αι* and *-οι*, Nom. Pl., are treated as short.)

IX. (1) Generally the accent on the oblique cases remains on the same syllable as in the Nominative, as far as is permitted by the general rules (Rule II.).

e.g. ἄνθρωπος, ἄνθρωπον, ἀνθρώπον.

(2) All Genitives and Datives of oxytone words of the 1st and 2nd declension are perispomena.

e.g. ὁδός, ὁδοῦ, ὁδοί, ὁδῶν.²

¹ But notice ἀπειμι, πάρεστη, ἀπιθι, etc.

² But in the Attic 2nd declension the acute is retained.

e.g. λεώς, λεώ.

(3) In the 1st declension the Gen. Plur. is *perispomenon*.

(4) In the 3rd declension the Gen. and Dat. of monosyllables are accented on the last syllable.¹

e.g. *χείρ*, *χειρός*, *χεῖρες*, *χειρῶν*.

(5) In words like *πόλις* and *πήχυς* the endings -*εως*, -*εων* are treated as one syllable.

e.g. *πόλεως*, *πήχεων*.

X. No complete rules can be given for accenting the Nominative Singular. But the following rules are generally true.

(1) Oxytone are—Nouns in -*ευς*, e.g. *βασιλεύς*.

-*ω*, e.g. *πειθώ*.

-*ας* (-*αδος*), e.g. *φυγάς* (*φυγάδος*).

-*ις* (Acc. Imparisyllabic), e.g. *ἔλπις* (Acc. *ἔλπιδα*).

Most Adjectives in -*ρος*, e.g. *αισχρός*.

-*νος*, *ἰκανός*.

-*ης*, *ἀληθῆς*.

-*υς*, *ἡδύς*.

-*ικος*, *πρακτικός*.

Verbal Adjectives in -*τος*, *λυτός*.

Adj. meaning 'good' or 'bad,' *ἀγαθός*, *κακός*.

(2) Paroxytone. Most Nouns in -*ια*, e.g. *δειλία*.

Verbal Nouns in -*τωρ*, *ρίτωρ*.

Patronymics, *Ἀλκιβιάδης*.

Verbal adj. in -*τεος*, *λυτέος*.

(3) Proparoxytone. Nouns in -*εια* except those from Verbs in -*εύω*, *ἀλιγθεῖα*, but *δουλεία*.

(4) The accent goes back as far as possible in

Verbals in -*μα*, e.g. *πρᾶγμα*.

Neuters in -*ος*, *μέγεθος*.

Nouns in -*ις* (Acc. -*ιν*), *δύναμις*.

Comparatives and Superlatives, *καλλίων*, *ἄριστος*.

Adjectives in -*μος*, *φρόνημος*.

¹ Except Participles, *θείς*, *θέντος*, with *τίς*, *τίνος*; *πᾶς*, *πάντων*, *πᾶσι*; *παιών*, and some others.

GENERAL VOCABULARY

A

abandon, ἀπολεῖπω
ability, *to the best of*, κατὰ δύναμιν
able, *be*, { δύναμαι
 οὗτος τέ εἰμι
about, *concerning*, περί, Gen.
about, *to be about to*, μέλλω
about (of numbers), μάλιστα or ὡς
abroad, *to be abroad*, away from
 home, ἀποδημέω
absent, *to be*, ἀπειμι
accomplish, πράσσω, ἐκπράσσω,
 ἔκτελέω
 without *accomplishing one's
 purpose*, ἀπράκτος
according to, κατά, Acc.
account,—*on account of*, διά, Acc.,
 ἕνεκα, Gen.
accuse, αἰτιάομαι. See p. 68. ἔγ-
 καλέω. Voc. 152
Achelous (river), Ἀχελῶς
acquit, ἀπολύω. See p. 68
Acropolis, Ἀκρόπολις
act rightly, ποιεῖν τὸ προσῆκον
add, προστίθημι
addition, *in addition to*, πρός, Dat.
address, *exhort*, παρακελεύομαι,
 Dat.
admire, θαυμάζω. See p. 70
admit, *confess*, ὁμολογέω
adrance, προχωρέω
advantage,—*it is to the advantage
 of*, συμφέρει. See p. 128

adversary, ἐναντίος
adverse, ἐναντίος
adversity, *be in adversity*, δυστυχέω
advice, *give*, συμβουλεύω, Dat.
advise, πείθω, Acc., παραπέω,
 συμβουλεύω, Dat.
Aeneas, Αἰνείας, -ου
Aeschines, Αἰσχίνης, -ου
afraid, *be*, δέδοικα, φοβέομαι
after (Prep.) μετά, Acc.
 after this, μετά ταῦτα, ἐκ
 τούτων
 (Conj.), ἐπειδή, ἐπεί, ἀφ' οὐ,
 ἐξ οὐ. See p. 150
afterwards, ὕστερον, μετά ταῦτα
 not long afterwards, οὐ πολλῷ
 ὕστερον
again, αὖθις, πάλιν
against (motion), ἐπί, Acc.
Agamemnon, Ἄγαμέμνων, -ονος
agree, *come to terms*, συμβαίνω
agreement, *terms*, τὰ ρήγτα
Alcibiades, Ἀλκιβιάδης, -ου
Alcmaeon, Ἀλκμαίων, -ωνος
Alexander, Ἀλέξανδρος
all, πᾶς
all but, δσον οὐ
allow, ἔιω, Acc. ἐπιτρέπω, Dat.
 it is allowed, ἔξεστι, πάρεστι,
 Dat.
ally, σύμμαχος
 to be one's ally, fight for one,
 συμμάχομαι, Dat.

almost, σχεδόν, δύσον οὐ
alone, μόνος
already, ἤδη
also, καὶ
although, καὶπερ. See p. 122
always, ἀεί
ambassador, πρέσβεις
ambush, ἐνέδρα
Amphion, Ἀμφίων, -ωνος
Amphipolis, Ἀμφίπολις, -εως
ample, ἵκανός
ancestor, πρόγονος
anchor, —weigh anchor, αἴρω
anger, δργή
angry, to be angry with, ἀγανακτέω,
 δργίζομαι, Dat., δ' δργῆς ἔχειν,
 Acc.
announce, ἀγγέλλω, ἀπαγγέλλω
annul, καταλύω
another, ἄλλος
answer, ἀποκρίνομαι
 in answer, ὑπολαβών
anticipate, φθάνω. See p. 123
appear, φαίνομαι
 appear to be, be manifestly.
 See p. 123
applaud, ἀναθορυσθέω
appoint, καθίστημι. Voc. 79
approach, προσέρχομαι, πρόσ-
 ειμι
Arcadian, Ἀρκάς, -όδος
archer, τοξότης
Archimedes, Ἀρχιμήδης, -ου
ardour, σπουδή
Argives, Ἀργεῖοι
arise (*hæppen*), γίγνομαι
Aristides, Ἀριστείδης, -ου
arm (verb), καθοπλίζω
arms, σπλα
army, στράτευμα, στρατός, στρατία
 (as opposed to fleet) πεζός
arouse, ἐγέιρω

array, arrange, τάσσω
 arrange a line of battle,
 παρατάσσομαι, ἀντιτάσσομαι
arrest, συλλαμβάνω
arrive, ἀφικνέομαι
arrow, τόξευμα
art, τέχνη
Artaxerxes, Ἀρταξέρξης, -ου
as, ὡς, as if, ώσπερ (See p. 123);
 as . . . as, οὐτως . . . ὡς; as
 . . . as possible, ὡς, with
 superlative; as soon as, ἐπει
 τάχιστα
ascertain, πυνθάνομαι, γιγνώσκω
ashamed, to be, αἰσχύνομαι
Asia, Ἀσία, f.
ask (in question), ἐρωτάω [Aorist
 ἥρδμην]
 (request), αἰτέω
assault, προσβολή
 with one assault, μιᾷ δρμῇ
assemble, συνέρχομαι
assembly, ἐκκλησία
 hold an a., ἐκκλησίαν ποιεῖν
assert, φάσκω
assist, βοηθέω, Dat., ὠφελέω, Acc.
assistance, βοήθεια
associate with, φοιτάω παρά,
 Acc.
Athens, Ἀθῆναι. Voc. 18
Athenian, Ἀθηναῖος
attach, προστίθημι
attack, ἐπιτίθεμαι, προσβάλλω,
 ἐπειμι, ἐμπίπτω, Dat.
 (noun), προσβολή
attempt, πειράομαι, Gen. or Inf.,
 ἐπιχειρέω, Dat. or Inf.
attend to, προσέχω (τὸν νοῦν), Dat.
 care for, θεραπεύω
Attica, ἡ Ἀττική
authorities, οἱ ἐν τέλει
avenge, τιμωρέω. Voc. 75

avoid, ὑπεξίσταμαι, ὑποστρέφω
avait, δέχομαι, προσδέχομαι
avakēn, ἐγέίρω
away, *to be*, ἀπειμι.

B

Babylon, Βαβυλών, -ῶνος, *f.*
bad, κακός, πονηρός
badly, *poorly*, φαύλως
baggage, σκεύη, *n. pl.*
band (crowd), σχλος
banish, ἐκβάλλω (for Passive use
 ἐκπίπτω)
barbarian, βάρβαρος
base, αἰσχρός
battle, μάχη; (*by sea*) ναυμαχία
 join battle with, μάχην συν-
 ἀπτω πρός, *Acc.*
 (*esp. of fighting at close
 quarters*) ἐs χεῖρας ἔρχομαι,
Dat.
bay, κόλπος
be, εἰμί, or with Adverbhs ἔχω, e.g.
 εν ἔχειν, *to be well*
be, *be sufficient*, ὑπάρχω
bear, φέρω
 (*endure*), φέρω, τλάω
beat (defeat), νικάω
beautiful, καλός
become, γίγνομαι
beside, συμβαίνει, *Dat.*
before, πρὸν. See p. 150
before (Adv.), πρότερον, τὸ πρὸν
before that, πρὸ τοῦ
beg (entrebat), παραπέομαι
begin, ἀρχω ορ ἀρχομαι. See pp.
 beginning, ἀρχή [68, 123]
behalf, --on behalf of, ὑπὲρ, *Gen.*
behave to, treat, χράομαι, *Dat.*
believe, πείθομαι, πιστεύω, *Dat.*
benefit. Voc. 65

besiege, πολιορκέω
betray, προδίδωμι
better, --to be better than, διαφέρω,
 Gen.
bind, δέω
birth, γένος
bite, δάκνω
biouias, αὐλίζομαι
blame, μέμφομαι, *Dat.*; ἐν αἰτίᾳ
 ἔχω, *Acc.*
 to blame, blameworthy, αἰτιος
bold, θρασύς, τολμηρός
boldness, τόλμα
boast, κομπάζω
book, βιβλος
booty, λεία
both, ἀμφότεροι, ἐκάτεροι. See
 p. 135
both . . . and, καὶ . . . καὶ . . .,
 or τε . . . καὶ . . .
boy, παῖς
Brasilius, Βρασίδας, -ου
brave, ἀνδρεῖος
bravely, ἀνδρείως
bravery, ἀνδρεία
bread, ἄρτος
breadth, εὐρος. See p. 23
break (a treaty, etc.), λύω, παρα-
 βαίνω
 (*a line*), παραρρήγνυμι
breakfast, ἀριστον
 get breakfast, ἀριστοποιέομαι
bribe, δῶρον
bridge, γέφυρα
briefly, διὰ βραχέων
bring (of things), φέρω, προσφέρω,
 κομίζω
 (*of persons*), ἀγω
down, καταφέρω
in, εἰσφέρω, εἰσκομίζω
back, ἀπάγω
back from exile, κατάγω

bring out, ἐκφέρω
up, τρέφω
upon, ἐμβάλλω
broad, εύρυς. See p. 23
brother, ἀδελφός
built, οἰκοδομέω
(ships, etc.), κατασκευάζω
to be built round, περιβάλ-
 λεσθαι, Dat.
bull, ταῦρος
burdensome, ἐπαχθής
burn (transitive), καίω, κατακαίω
 (intransitive), καίομαι
bury, θάπτω
buy, ὀνέομαι. See p. 70
by (near), πρός, Dat.
 (agent), ὑπό, Gen. (and see
 p. 18).

C

Cadmus, Κάδμος, -ου
Cadmea (*citadel of Thebes*), Καδ-
 μεῖα, f.
call, καλέω, προσκαλέω
call together, συγκαλέω
Callias, Καλλίας, -ου
camp, στρατόπεδον
can, δύναμαι
capable of, ίκανός (with Inf.)
captain, λοχαγός
 (of ship), τριήραρχος
captive, αλχαμάλωτος
Carduchi, Κάρδουχοι
care, take, φυλάσσομαι, ἐπιμελέ-
 ομαι. See p. 98
carefully, ἐπιμελῶς
careless, ράθυμος, ἀμελῆς
carelessness, ἀμέλεια
carry, φέρω
carry out (*a decree, etc.*), περαιώνω
Carthage, Καρχηδόνων, -όνος
Carthaginian, Καρχηδόνιος

catch, καταλαμβάνω
cattle, κτήνη, n. pl.
cause, αἴτια
cautiously, εὐλαβῶς
cavalry, ἵππης
carry, σπήλαιον
cause to be, καθίστημι
cease, παύομαι. See pp. 68, 123
centre, τὸ μέσον
certain, σαφής
 a certain, τις (enclitic)
chance, τύχη
charge, ἐπειμι; (Noun), προσβολή
cheer, θαρσύνω
chief (men), οἱ πρῶτοι
child, τέκνον
choke, ἀποπνίγω
choose, αἵρεομαι, ἔξαιρέομαι, ἐκλέγω
Cilician, Κιλικες
Cimon, Κίμων, -ωνος
citadel, ἀκρόπολις
Cithaeron, Κιθαιρών, -ώνος
citizen, πολίτης
city, πόλις, ἄστυ
clearly, σαφῶς
Cleon, Κλέων, -ωνος
clever, δεινός
cling to, ἔχομαι, Gen.
cloak, χλαῖνα
closely, continuously, συνεχῶς
clothes, ἐσθῆς
coast, ἀκτή
Colchis, Κολχίς, -ΐδος
cold (Noun), ψύχος
collect (trans.), ἀγείρω, συναγείρω
 (levy), ἀθροίζω
colony, ἀποικία
come, ἔρχομαι
come,—to be come, ἥκω
 to help, βοηθέω, Nat.
forward (to speak), πάρειμι,
 παρέρχομαι

<i>come down</i> (<i>esp. to the sea</i>) κατέρ-	converse, διαλέγομαι
χομαι	convict, ἐλέγχω
<i>back from exile</i> , κατέρχομαι	Corinth, Κόρινθος, f.
<i>on</i> (=to ensue), ἐπιγίγνομαι	corn, σῖτος
<i>complain</i> , κελεύω, Acc.; προσ-	country, χώρα
τάσσω, Dat.	(native land), πατρίς
(in the army, 'pass the word'),	courage, ἀνδρεία
παραγγέλλω, Dat.	be of good courage, εὐθυμέω
<i>be in command of</i> , ἡγεμονεύω,	courageous, ἀνδρείος
Gen.; ἐφέστηκα, Dat.	cowardice, κακία, δειλία
<i>common</i> , κοινός	cowardly, cowardly, κακός, δειλός
<i>companion</i> , ἑταῖρος	craft, δόλος
<i>compel</i> , ἀναγκάζω	create, cause to be, καθίστημι
<i>complain</i> , δεινόν ποιέομαι	(transitive tenses)
<i>complete</i> , ἐκτελέω, ἔξεργάζομαι	Cretans, Κρήτες
<i>comrades</i> (Voc.), ὁ ἄνδρες	crime, commit a crime, ἀδικέω
<i>conceal</i> , κρύπτω. See p. 74	crisis, καιρός
<i>concerned</i> , as far as I am concerned,	cross, διαβαίνω
τὸ ἐπ' ἐμέ	(a mountain), ὑπερβαίνω
<i>condemn</i> , κατακρίνω, καταγλ-	crowd, ὅχλος
γνώσκω. See p. 68	crown, στέφανος
<i>condition</i> (on condition that), ἐφ'	cruel, ὠμός
φτε. See p. 100	cry out, βοάω
<i>confess</i> , ὄμολογέω	cut, τέμνω
<i>confidence</i> , θάρσος	off, ἀποτέμνω
<i>confident</i> , to be, θαρρέω	cut off, i.e. intercept, ἀπολαμ-
<i>confiscated</i> , to be, δημόσιον γί-	βάνω
γνεσθαι. Voc. 162	Cyclops, Κύκλωψ, -ωπος
<i>consider</i> , deliberate, βουλεύομαι	Cyprus, Κύπρος, f.
Conon, Κόνων, -ωνος	Cyrus, Κύρος.
<i>conquer</i> , νικάω, Acc.; κρατέω, Gen.	D
<i>conscious</i> , am conscious of, συνοίδαι	danger, κίνδυνος
ἐμαυτῷ. See p. 52	be in danger of, κινδυνεύω, Inf.
<i>consider</i> , think, νομίζω	dangerous, δεινός
deliberate, βουλεύομαι	dare, τολμάω
<i>consult</i> , συμβουλεύομαι, κοινω-	daring, τόλμα
νέομαι, Dat.	Darius, Δαρείος
(an oracle), χράμαι, Dat.	dark, σκοτεινός
<i>contest</i> , ἀγών, ἀμιλλά	darkness, σκότος
<i>continent</i> , ήπειρος	dart, βέλος
<i>continue</i> , διατελέω. See p. 123	daughter, θυγάτηρ
<i>contrary to</i> (the law, etc.), παρά,	
Acc.	

<i>dawn, ἡλιος</i>	<i>deserve, δέξιος εἶναι, Gen.</i>
<i>at dawn, daybreak. Voc. 20</i>	<i>desire, ἐπιθυμέω, Gen.</i>
<i>day, ἡμέρα</i>	<i>desist from, παύομαι, Gen. or Part.</i>
<i>day,—by day, all day, etc. See p. 23</i>	<i>despair, ἀθυμέω, ἀθύμως ἔχω</i>
<i>day by day, every day, καθ' ἡμέραν</i>	<i>despatch, ἀποστέλλω</i>
<i>day before, προτεραία</i>	<i>despise, ὅλιγωρέω, καταφρονέω, Gen.</i>
<i>day after, next day, ὑστεραία</i>	<i>destroy, ἀπόλλυμι, διαφθείρω (a city), καθαιρέω</i>
<i>to-day, τήμερον</i>	<i>determine, βουλεύομαι, or use δοκεῖ. Voc. 46</i>
<i>on the same day, αὐθίμερον</i>	<i>die, ἀποθνήσκω, τελευτάω</i>
<i>dead body, νεκρός</i>	<i>different, in different directions, etc. Use ἄλλος . . . ἄλλοσε, etc. See p. 135</i>
<i>dear, φίλος</i>	<i>difficult, χαλεπός</i>
<i>death, θάνατος</i>	<i>difficulties, τὰ χαλεπά</i>
<i>put to death. See kill</i>	<i>to be in difficulties, ἀπορέω</i>
<i>deceive, ἔξαπατάω</i>	<i>with difficulty, σχολῆ</i>
<i>decide, διακρίνομαι, or use δοκεῖ</i>	<i>direction, in the direction of, ἐπ̄, Gen.; πρός, Acc.</i>
<i>decide previously (of senate), προβούλευνω</i>	<i>in different directions, use ἄλλος . . . ἄλλοσε. See p. 135</i>
<i>decree (of senate at Athens), προβούλευμα</i>	<i>in all directions, πανταχόσε</i>
<i>deep, ἔργον</i>	<i>from all directions, πανταχόθεν</i>
<i>deep, βαθύς</i>	<i>disaster, συμφορά</i>
<i>four deep, etc., ἐπί, Gen.</i>	<i>discontented, to be, δεινὸν ποιοῦμαι</i>
<i>defeat, νικάω</i>	<i>discover, εὑρίσκω, μανθάνω</i>
<i>to be defeated, ἥσταόμαι</i>	<i>discuss, διακρίνομαι περί, Gen.</i>
<i>defend, ἀμύνω (see p. 14) φυλάσσω; (speak in defence of oneself), ἀπολογέομαι</i>	<i>disembark, ἀποβαίνω</i>
<i>delay (trans.), κωλύω</i>	<i>disgraceful, αἰσχρός</i>
<i>(intrans.), μένω, ἐπέχω</i>	<i>disheartened, άθυμος</i>
<i>deliberate, βουλεύομαι</i>	<i>dismiss, ἀφίημι</i>
<i>delighted, be delighted, ήδομαι</i>	<i>(from one's thoughts), έάω</i>
<i>Delphi, Δελφοί, in. pl.</i>	<i>disobey, ἀπειθέω, Dat.</i>
<i>Demosthenes, Δημοσθένης, -ous</i>	<i>display, show, φαίνω, ἀποδείκνυμι</i>
<i>deny, οὐ φημι, ἀπαρνέομαι. See p. 160</i>	<i>show off, ἐπιδείκνυμαι</i>
<i>despise, ἀποστερέω</i>	<i>dissatisfied with, to be, χαλεπῶς φέρω</i>
<i>descend (esp. to the sea), κατέρχομαι</i>	<i>distance, at a distance, διὰ πολλοῦ</i>
<i>desert (noun), η ἔρημος (χώρα)</i>	
<i>(trans.) ἀπολεῖπω</i>	
<i>(intrans. of soldier), αὐτομολέω</i>	
<i>(evacuate, leave empty), ἔρημόω</i>	

<i>distant, to be, ἀπέχω</i> , Gen. or <i>ἀπό</i> with Gen.	<i>end (trans. or intrans.), τελευτάω</i>
<i>distress, to be in, ἀπορέω</i>	<i>end one's life, τελευτάω</i>
<i>ditch, τάφρος</i>	<i>endure, τλάω</i>
<i>divulge, μηνύω</i>	<i>(punishment, etc.), ὑπέχω</i>
<i>do, ποιέω, πράσσω</i>	<i>enemy, πολέμιος, ἔχθρος</i>
<i>doctor, λατρός</i>	<i>(a private enemy), ἔχθρος</i>
<i>Dorieus, Δωριεύς, -έως</i>	<i>engaged, to be en-</i> } <i>σπουδάζω, Λcc.</i>
<i>down (Prep.), κατά.</i> See p. 234	<i>gaged on, / εἰναι περί, Αcc.</i>
<i>drachma, δραχμή</i>	<i>enough (adj.), ίκανός</i>
<i>draw up, drag up, ἀνέλκω</i>	<i>enquire, ἐρωτάω</i>
<i>draw up, array, τάσσω</i>	<i>enraged, to be enraged, ὀργίζομαι</i>
<i>dread, δέοικα, δέδια</i>	<i>enrich, πλουτίζω</i>
<i>dream,—in a dream, δναρ</i>	<i>enslave, καταδουλώ</i>
<i>drive, έλανω</i>	<i>ensue, ἐπιγίγνομαι</i>
<i>drive out, ἐκβάλλω</i>	<i>enter, εἰσειμι εἰς, εἰσέρχομαι εἰς</i>
<i>duty, τὸ προσῆκον</i>	<i>entreat, παραιτέομαι</i>
<i>dwell, οἰκέω.</i>	<i>envy, ξηλόω. See p. 68</i>

E

<i>each, ἕκαστος : (of two) ἕκατερος.</i>	<i>Ephesus, "Ἐφεσος, f.</i>
See p. 135	<i>Ephors, Ἐφόροι</i>
<i>each time, ἕκαστοτε</i>	<i>Erigonoi, Ἐπίγονοι</i>
<i>eagerly, προθύμως</i>	<i>equal, ίσως</i>
<i>eagerness, σπουδή</i>	<i>on equal terms, ἐξ ίσου</i>
<i>ear, οὖς</i>	<i>εργεῖρ, παρασκευάζομαι</i>
<i>early, πρωτί</i>	<i>escape, ἐκφεύγω</i>
<i>earth, γῆ</i>	<i>especially, μάλιστα, ἀλλως τε καὶ . . .</i>
<i>easy, ράδιος</i>	<i>esteem highly, περί πολλοῦ (πλείονος, πλείστου) ποιεῖσθαι</i>
<i>eat, ἄσθιω</i>	<i>evacuate, ἔξειμι ἐκ</i>
<i>eclipse, ἔκλεψις</i>	<i>even, καὶ</i>
<i>Egypt, Αἴγυπτος, f.</i>	<i>not even, οὐδέ</i>
<i>either . . . or, ή . . . ή</i>	<i>evening, ἐσπέρα</i>
<i>elder, πρεσβύτερος</i>	<i>towards evening, πρὸς ἐσπέραν</i>
<i>elect, αἱρέομαι, χειροτονέω</i>	<i>everywhere, πανταχοῦ</i>
<i>embark, ἐμβαίνω εἰς, Αcc.</i>	<i>(in all directions), πανταχόστε</i>
<i>empire, ἀρχή</i>	<i>evil, κακός</i>
<i>encamp, στρατοπεδεύομαι, αὐλίζομαι</i>	<i>(evil tidings, etc.), τὰ κακά</i>
<i>encourage, παραμυθέομαι, Dat.</i>	<i>exceedingly, μάλα, σφόδρα</i>
<i>encouraged, θαρρέω</i>	<i>except, πλήν (as Prep. governs Gen.)</i>

excessively, λιαν
exhaust, κατατρίβω
exhort, παρακελεύομαι, Dat.
exile (verb), ἐκβάλλω
exile (person), φυγάς
exile (banishment), φυγή
expedient, ἵτις, συμφέρει, Dat.
expedition, στρατεῖα
experience, ἐμπειρία
experienced, ἐμπειρός
 (*having skill*), ἐπιστήμων
explain, ἐξηγέομαι
extreme, ἔσχατος.

F

faithful, πιστός
fall, πέπτω
fall on, attack, ἐμπίπτω, Dat.
fall down, καταπίπτω
falsely, ψευδῶς
fatigue, λιμός
famous, famous, γνώριμος, ἐπιφανῆς
fare badly, κακῶς πράστω
fast, ταχύς (adv. ταχέως)
father, πατήρ
fear, φοβέομαι
feast, ἑορτή; vbl. εὐωχέομαι
few, δλίγοι
feld, ἄγρος
fight, μάχομαι, Dat.
final, εὐρίσκω
find out, ascertain by enquiry,
 πυνθάνομαι
learn, get to know by observation, etc., γνωσκω
finish (cause to cease), παύω
 (*cease*), παύομαι. See pp. 14,
 123
 (trans. or intrans.), τελευτάω
 (*accomplish, complete*), ἐκ-
 τελέω, ἐξεργάζομαι

fire, πῦρ

fire, set on fire, ἀπτω, καίω
firm, βέβαιος; Adv. βεβαλώς
first, πρῶτος; Adv. πρώτον
 to arrive first, etc., φθάνω.
 See p. 123
fish, ἰχθύς
fit out, παρασκευάζω
fitting, ἵτις, πρέπει, Dat.
flank,—on the flank, κατὰ κέρας
fleet, ἃλις νῆσος or τὸ ναυτικόν
flight, ἥριτος to flight, τρέπω
flower, ἄνθος
fly (run away), φεύγω
 (*in the air*), πέτομαι
follow, ἐπομαι, Dat.
 (*pursue*), διώκω
following, next, ἐπιγεγνόμενος
 the following, as follows, etc.,
 τάδε, ὅδε. See p. 133
folly, μωρία, άνοια
food, σῖτος.
foolish, μῶρος, ἀφρων
foot, πούς
for (on behalf of), ὑπέρ, Gen.;
 (*for the sake of*), ἔνεκα, Gen.
forbid, οὐκ ἔάω, ἀπαγορέύω (Aor.
 ἀπεῖπον). See p. 160
force, βία
 by force, βίᾳ, κατὰ κράτος
forces (mil.), δύναμις, or see army.
 with all his force, πανστρατίᾳ
foreign, βάρβαρος
 land, ἡ βάρβαρος
forest, θύλη
forget, ἐπιλανθάνομαι. See p. 68
former. Use πρίν
the former . . . the latter, ἕκεῖνος
 . . . οὗτος. See p. 133
formerly, πάλαι, πρότερον
forsooth, ἀρά, δῆτα. See p. 237
fort, τείχισμα
fortify, τειχίζω, περιτειχίζω

fortunate, εὐτυχής

free, ἑλεύθερος

free (Verb), ἑλευθερόω, λύω

freedom, ἑλευθερία

friendly, φίλος

friendly, εὔγονος

to be on friendly terms, διὰ
φίλας λέγαι, Dat.

from, ἀπό, ἐκ; (*of persons*) παρά,
Gen. c.

front, —*in front*, ἐκ τοῦ ἔμπροσθεν

frontier, ὅρος

fruit, καρπός

fulfil a promise, ὑπόσχεσιν ἀποδί-
δωμι

full, πλήως

funeral pyre, πυρά

furiously, προπετῶς

furlong, στάδιον

future, μέλλων; *for the future*, τὸ
λοιπόν; *any time in the future*,
τοῦ λοιποῦ.

G

games, ἀγώνες (pl. of ἀγών, con-
test)

garrison, φρούριον, φρουρός

gale, πύλη

gather (*fruit*, etc.), συγκομίζομαι

general, στρατηγός

to be general, στρατηγέω

generous, ἑλευθέριος

get, κτάομαι

get up, Intrans. tenses and Mid. of
ἀνιστῆμι

gift, δῶρον

give, δίδωμι

back, ἀποδίδωμι

up, παραδίδωμι

in marriage, ἐκδίδωμι

a share of, μεταδίδωμι. See
p. 70

give advice, συμβουλεύω, Dat.

glad, —*to be glad*, ήδομαι. See
pp. 72, 123

gladly, ήδεως

glorious, καλός

glory, κλέος, δόξα

gnat, κώνωψ

go, βαίνω, εἰμι

again, ἀπέρχομαι, ἀπειμι

out, ἔξερχομαι, ἔξειμι

down, καταβαίνω

about, απονηγ, φοιτάω

to be going to, μέλλω

god, θεός

gold, χρυσός

golden, χρυσόνς

good, ἀγαθός

do good to, εὖ ποιέω. See p. 74

good-will, εὔνοια

Gorgon, Γοργώ

government, οἱ ἐν τέλει

graceful, χαρίεις

graciously, ἡπίως, εὐμενῶς

grateful, *to be*, χάριν οἴδα, χάριν
ἔχω. See p. 70

great, μέγας

greatly, πολύ, σφόδρα

Greece, Ἑλλάς, -άδος

Greeks, Ἑλληνες

grief, πένθος

ground, *on the ground that*, *be-*
cause, ὡς. See p. 122

grow, αὐξάνομαι

guard, φύλαξ (Noun), φύλαξ

guard, φυλάσσω

off one's guard, ἀπροσδόκητος

guest, ξένος

guile, ήγειμῶν

(Verb), ήγεομαι, Dat.

guilty, αἰτιος

be guilty of, ὄφλισκάνω.

H

half, ἥμισυ. *Voc.* 74

hall, αὐλή

halt, ἀναπαύομαι

hand, χέρι

fall into the hands of, ὑποχείριος γίγνομαι, Dat.

fight hand to hand, εἰς χειραςφρομαι

happen, take place, γίγνομαι. Also τυγχάνω. See p. 123. συμβάλλει (Impers.) Dat.

harbour, λιμῆν

hardly, μολις, σχολῇ

hardship, πόνος

harm, βλάπτω, κακὰ δρᾶν, κακὰ ποιεῖν (see p. 74), ἀδικέω

(Noun), βλάβη, κακόν

hasten, σπεύδω (*Voc.* 83); (intrans.), ἐπειγομαι

hate, μισέω

be hated by, hateful to, ἀπεχθάνομαι, Dat.

hate, χέω, or ἔστι with Dat.

head, κεφαλή

hear, ἀκούω. See p. 68

height, ἄκρον

height,—at the height of, ἐν ἀκμῇ

Hellenespon, Ἑλλήσποντος

help, βοηθεία

help, βοηθέω, Dat.; ὀφελέω, Acc.

herald, κῆρυξ

Hercules, Ἡρακλῆς, -έους

herdsman, ποιμήν, βοοκόλος

here, ἐνθάδε, αὐτοῦ

hereupon, ἐνθα δή

hero, ἥρως

hide, κρύπτω. See p. 74

high-minded, ἐλευθέριος

hill, λόφος

hinder, κωλύω. See p. 160

hire, μισθώματα

historian, συγγραφεύς

hither, δέντρο

hold, ἔχω, κατέχω

(*cling to*), ἔχομαι, Gen.

hold out, endure, ἀντέχω

hold one's ground, ἀνθίσταμαι

*home, οἶκος. *Voc.* 18*

to be abroad, away from home,

ἀποδημέω • •

Homeric, Ὁμηρος

honour, τιμή, δόξα

honour (Verb), τιμάω

honourable, καλός

hope, ἐλπίς

hope (verb), ἐλπίζω. See p. 51

hopeless, ἀνελπιστός

(of things) *to be hopeless,*

ἀνελπιστως ἔχειν

hoplite, ὁπλίτης

horn, κέρας

horse, ἵππος

on horseback, ἐφ' ἵππου

host, πλῆθος

hostage, ὅμηρος

house, οἶκος, οἰκία

how (with Adjectives and Adverbs), ὡς

(Interrogative), πῶς, etc. See p. 59

how much, how many. See p. 59

however, μέντοι (2nd word), δῆμως (may be 1st word)

hunger, λιμός

hungry, to be, πεινάω

hunt, θηρέύω

hurl, βάλλω, βίπτω

down, κατακυλίνδω.

I

idle, to be idle, ρᾳθυμέω

<i>if, εἰ, ἐάν.</i> See p. 112	J
<i>in questions (=whether), εἰ,</i>	
<i>πότερον.</i> See p. 62 and note	
<i>ignorant, be ignorant, ἀγνοέω</i>	
<i>ill, to be ill, νοσέω</i>	
<i>imitate, τὰ δημοια πράσσω, Dat.</i>	
<i>immediately, εὐθύς</i>	
<i>immense (of numbers), ἀναριθμήτος</i>	
<i>immortal, ἀθάνατος</i>	
<i>impioiē, ἀσεβῆς</i>	
<i>important, to consider important,</i>	
<i>περὶ πολλοῦ ποιεῖσθαι</i>	
<i>impossible, ἀδύνατον</i>	
<i>imprison, ἔργω, καταδέω</i>	
<i>in, ἐν, Dat.</i>	
<i>inasmuch as, ὅτε.</i> See p. 122	
<i>increase, αὔξανω, αὔξω</i>	
(iintr.), αὔξάνομαι	
<i>independent, αὐτόνομος</i>	
<i>indignant, to be indignant, δεινὸν</i>	
<i>ποιέομαι, χαλεπῶς φέρειν</i>	
<i>induce, πείθω</i>	
<i>infantry, πεζόλ</i>	
<i>inform.</i> Use <i>ἀγγέλλω</i>	
<i>inhabit, ἐνοικέω</i>	
<i>inhabitants, οἱ ἐνοικοι, οἱ ἐνοι-</i>	
<i>κοῦντες</i>	
<i>injure, ἀδικέω, βλάπτω, κακὰ δράω.</i>	
See p. 74	
<i>innocent, ἀνάλτιος</i>	
<i>instead of, ἀντί, i.e.</i>	
<i>instruct, give orders to, προστάσσω,</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	
<i>teach, διδάσκω</i>	
<i>intend, διανοέομαι, ἐν νῷ ἔχω</i>	
<i>into, εἰς, Acc.</i>	
<i>invade, εἰσβάλλω εἰς</i>	
<i>involved in, to be, καταστῆναι εἰς</i>	
<i>Ionian, Ἰόνιος</i>	
<i>island, νῆσος</i>	
<i>Italy, Ἰταλία.</i>	
	K
	<i>keep, ἔχω, κατέχω</i>
	<i>safe, σώζομαι</i>
	<i>one's word, τῇ πλοτεῖ ἐμμένω</i>
	<i>kill, ἀποκτείνω.</i> (For Passive use,
	<i>ἀποθινήσκω, lit. I die)</i>
	<i>knolly, ἡπίως, εὐμενῶς</i>
	<i>king, βασιλεύς</i>
	<i>kinsman, συγγενής</i>
	<i>know, οἶδα.</i> See p. 52
	<i>not to know, ἀγνοέω</i>
	<i>know how to, οἶδα, or ἐπίσ-</i>
	<i>ταπεῖ, with Inf.</i>
	<i>am conscious οἴ-, συνοίδα</i>
	<i>ἐμαυτῷ.</i> See p. 52
	<i>known, famous, γνώριμος.</i>
	L
	<i>luck, scarcity, ἔνδεια, ἀπορία</i>
	<i>Laconia, ἡ Δακωνική</i>
	<i>land, γῆ</i>
	<i>native land, πατρίς</i>
	<i>by land, κατὰ γῆν</i>
	<i>last (Verb), διατελέω</i>
	<i>last, ὕστατος</i>
	<i>at last, τέλος οἱ τὸ τέλος</i>
	<i>late, ὄψις</i>
	<i>later,—in later times, χρόνῳ</i>
	<i>ὕστερον</i>
	<i>too late, δύψις</i>

<i>laugh to scorn</i> , καταγέλαω	<i>long, no longer</i> , οὐκέτι, μηκέτι
<i>to be a laughing-stock</i> , κατα- γέλαστος εἶναι	<i>how long?</i> πόσον χρόνον; <i>as long as</i> , δύσον χρόνον
<i>law</i> , νόμος	<i>look at</i> , προσβλέπω
<i>lazy</i> , ḥάθυμος	<i>loose</i> , λύω
<i>lead</i> , ἄγω, Acc.; ἡγέομαι, Dat. (<i>of a road</i>), φέρω	<i>lose</i> , ἀπόλλυμι
<i>leader</i> , ἡγεμών	<i>loss</i> , — <i>be at a loss</i> , ἀπορέω
<i>leadership</i> , ἡγεμονία	<i>loud</i> , μέγας
<i>leap</i> , εἰσάλλομαι. Voc. 140	<i>love</i> , φιλέω
<i>learn</i> , μανθάνω	<i>low</i> , λοιč-lying, πεδινός
<i>least</i> , — <i>at least</i> , γε	<i>Lysander</i> , Δύσανδρος.
<i>leave</i> , leave behind, λείπω, κατα- λείπω	 M
<i>leave</i> , depart from, ἀπέρχομαι, ἀπειμι	<i>Macedonian</i> (adj.), Μακεδονικός
<i>left</i> , ἀριστερός, εὐώνυμος on the left (wing), ἐπ' ἀριστερῷ	<i>mail</i> , μανικός
<i>less</i> (Adv.), ἥσσον	<i>maleness</i> , μανλία, ἀτη (= infatuation)
<i>lest</i> . See p. 98	<i>magistrates</i> , οἱ ἐν τέλει
<i>leisure</i> , σχολή	<i>magnificent</i> , εὐπρεπής
<i>Lemnos</i> , Δῆμνος, f.	<i>mainland</i> , ἡπειρος
<i>Lesbian</i> , Δέσποινος	<i>maintain</i> , abide by, ἔμμένω, Dat.
<i>let slip</i> , παρῆμι	<i>majority</i> , οἱ πολλοί
<i>letter</i> , ἐπιστολή	<i>make</i> , ποιέω
<i>levy</i> , ἀθροίζω	<i>be made</i> , appointed, intrans. tenses and mid. of καθίστημι
<i>lie</i> , ψεύδομαι	<i>man</i> , ἀνήρ (vir), ἀνθρωπος (hom.)
<i>lie (down)</i> , κεῖμαι	<i>man</i> (verb), πληρόω
<i>life</i> , βίος	<i>manner</i> , τρόπος
<i>light-armed troops</i> , πελτισταί	<i>many</i> , πολλοί
<i>like</i> , θμοίος	<i>Marathon</i> , Μαραθών. See p. 20
<i>limb</i> , μέλος	<i>march</i> , πορεύομαι
<i>linger</i> , διατρίβω	<i>marine</i> , ἐπιβάτης
<i>lion</i> , λέων	<i>market</i> , ἀγορά
<i>listen to</i> , ἀκροάομαι, ἀκούω, Gen. of person	<i>marry</i> (<i>of man</i>), γαμέω, Λess. (<i>of woman</i>), γαμοῦμαι, Dat.
<i>live in</i> , dwell in, οἰκέω, ἐνοικέω ἐν	<i>marshal</i> , λίμνη
<i>live</i> , be alive, ζάω	<i>marshy</i> , λιμνωδής
<i>pass one's time</i> , διάγω	<i>master</i> , δεσπότης (teacher), διδάσκαλος
<i>live on</i> , survive, ἐπιβιώω	<i>master</i> , be master of, κρατέω, Gen.
<i>living creature</i> , ζῶν	<i>meadow</i> , λειμών
<i>long</i> , μακρός: (<i>of time</i>), μακρός, πολύς	<i>means</i> , τρόπος

meanwhile, ἐν τούτῳ*Medea*, Μήδεια*meet*, ἐντυγχάνω, Dat.*go to meet*, ἀπαντάω, Dat.*men of old*, etc. See p. 1*mercenary*, μισθοφόρος*mercenary force*, τὸ ἔεινικόν*merchant ship*, ὁλκάς*message*, ἀγγελία*messenger*, ἀγγελος*middle*, μέσος. Voc. 77*Milesians*, Μιλήσιοι*Miltiades*, Μιλτιάδης, -ου*Minos*, Μίνως, -ωος or -ω*Minya*, Μίνυας*miserably*, ἀθλίως*missile*, βέλος*mistake*, make a mistake, be mis-taken, ἀμαρτάνω*moment*, occasion, καιρός*for the moment*, πρὸς τὸ παρόν*money*, χρήματα, ἀργύριον*(large sum of)*, πολλὰ χρήματα*monster*, θηρίον*month*, μήν*moon*, σελήνη*moreover*, πρὸς τούτοις*morning*, ἡώς*most (the majority)*, οἱ πολλοὶ*most of all*, μάλιστα*mother*, μήτηρ*mother city*, μητρόπολις*mountain*, ὄρος*much*, πολὺς*music*, μουσική*must*, δεῖ, or Verbal Adj. See

p. 130

my, ὁ ἐμός, μου*Mycenae*, Μυκῆναι.*Mytilene*, Μυτιλήνη.**N***name*, δνομα

(verb), δνομάζω

nay, nay rather (making a correction), μᾶλλον δέ, μὲν οὖν. See p. 238*near*, ἐγγύς*nearly*, σχεδόν*necessary*, ἐπιτήδειος*it is necessary*, δεῖ. See p. 128*necessity*, of necessity, ἀνάγκη*need*, δέομαι, ἀπορέω, Gen.*negotiate*, πράσσειν πρός, Acc.*neither*, οὐδέτερος. See p. 135*never*, οὐδέποτε, μηδέποτε*nevertheless*, μέντοι, δμως*new*, νέος

=fresh, καινός

new, τὰ ἀγγελθέντα*next*, following, ἐπιγιγνόμενος*Nicias*, Νικίας, -ου*night*, νύξ

by night, etc. See p. 23

noble, ἀγαθός, γενναῖος*nobody*, no one, οὐδέτις*noise*, ψόφος*nonsense*, —to talk nonsense, φλυα-

ρέω

nose, ρίς*not at all*, in no respect, οὐδέν*nothing*, οὐδέν*notice*, —without being noticed, etc.,

λαθών. See p. 123

number, πλῆθος.**O***obey*, πελθομαι, Dat.*obol*, ὀβολός*observe*, —not observed by, λαθών,
etc. See p. 123*obtain*, κτάμαι*Oedipus*, Οἰδίποις, -οδος

officers, οἱ ἄρχοντες
often, πολλάκις
old, — *men of old*, οἱ πάλαι
old man, γέρων
Olympian games, τὰ Ὀλύμπια
Olympos, Ὄλυμπος, f.
territory of, ἡ Ὀλυμπιακή
on, ἐπί, Gen.; ἐν, Dat.
on account of, διά, Ace.
on behalf of, ὑπέρ, Gen.
one, εἷς
one another, ἀλλήλους. See p. 135
one of two, etc. See p. 135
one . . . the other, ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ.
 See p. 40
once, ἅπαξ
 at once, εὐθύς
 once upon a time, ποτέ
only (Adj.), μόνος : (Adv.), μόνον
open, ἀνοιγνῦμι
opponent, ἔναρτλος
opportunity, καιρός
the opportunity comes, οφέλει,
 παρέχει (Impersonal), Dat.
oppose, ἐναντιοματι, Dat.
oppress, πιέζω
or, ἢ
orawle, χρηστήριον
orator, ῥήτωρ
order, κελεύω
 in order that, ἵνα, etc. See
 p. 94
organise, συσκευάζω
origin, ἀρχή
other, ἄλλος. See p. 135
ought, δεῖ, χρή. See p. 128
outcry, κραυγή
overcome, περιγγυοματι, κρατέω,
 Gen.
overtake, καταλαμβάνω
overthrow, raze (*a city*), καθαιρέω
overthrow, subdue, καταστρέφοματ

own. See p. 41
 ox, βοῦς.

P

pain, feel pain, ἀλγέω
pancratium, παγκράτιον
panic, φόβος
parasang (about 4 English miles),
 παρασάγγης
parasite, συγγεγνάσκω, Dat.
parent, γονεύς
pass, intrans. of time, διέρχομαι
pass the word along, παραγγέλλω
pass through, διαβαίνω
past, in the past, ἐν τῷ παρελθόντι
Χρόνῳ
patriotic, φιλόπολις
Pausanias, Παυσανίας, -ou
pay, μισθός
pay (tribute), φέρω
peace, εἰρήνη
 make peace, σπονδάς, εἰρήνην
 ποιοῦμαι, or σπένδομαι
 keep peace, remain at peace,
 εἰρήνην μάγω
Peloponnesus, Πελοπόννησος, f.
pelt, βάλλω
penalty, δίκη
 pay the penalty, δίκας διδόναι
 exact the penalty, δίκας λαμ-
 βάνειν παρά, Gen.
people, δῆμος
 (=people generally) οἱ ἄν-
 θρωποι
perceive, αἰσθάνομαι. See p. 52
perforce, ἀνάγκη
perhaps, ἴσως
Pericles, Περικλῆς, -έους
perilous, σφαλερός
perish, ἀπόλλυμαι, ἀποθνήσκω
permit, ἔάω
persecute, διώκω

<i>Persicus</i> , Περσεύς, -έως	possession,—be in possession of,
<i>Persia</i> , ή Περσική	κρατέω, Gen.
<i>Persian</i> , Πέρσης, -ου, Μῆδος	possessions, κτήματα, χρήματα
<i>persuade</i> , πείθω	possible, it is, ξεστι, πάρεστι,
<i>pestilence</i> , λοιμός	Dat.
<i>Philip</i> , Φλωπός	<i>postpone</i> , ἀναβάλλω
<i>philosopher</i> , φιλόσοφος	<i>Potidaea</i> , Ποτίδαια, f.
<i>Phineus</i> , Φινεύς, -έως	<i>power</i> , δύναμις, κράτος, δύμη
<i>Phoenician</i> , Φοίνικες	in power of, ἐπί, Dat.
<i>pious</i> , Θεοβόχος	<i>powerful</i> , δυνατός
<i>pirate</i> , ληστής	<i>praise</i> , ἔπαινος
<i>pity</i> , οἰκτείρω. See p. 70 (noun) έλεος	(Verb), ἔπαινέω
<i>place</i> , τόπος, χωρίον	<i>prefer</i> , προαιρέομαι
<i>plague</i> , λοιμός	<i>prepare</i> , παρασκευάζω
<i>plain</i> , πεδίον	<i>presence</i> , in presence of, παρά, Dat.
<i>plain</i> ,—it is plain that I, etc.,	(over against), ἐναντίον, Gen.
δῆλος είμι with Part. or φαίνομαι	<i>present</i> , δώρον
with Part.	<i>present</i> , to be, πάρειμι
<i>plainly</i> , σαφῶς	present condition of affairs, τὰ παρόντα
<i>Plataea</i> , Πλαταιαί	present danger, etc., τὸ αὐτίκα δεινόν
<i>Plataeans</i> , Πλαταιῆς, -έων	for the present, ἐν τῷ παρόντι, πρὸς τὸ παρόν
<i>pleased</i> ,—to be pleased, ήδομαι,	at the present moment, τὸ παραυτίκα
Dat. See p. 123	the present (time), τὸ νῦν
<i>pleasant</i> , pleasing, ήδύς	<i>preserve</i> , σώζομαι
<i>pleasure</i> , ήδονή	<i>press</i> ,—be hard pressed, πιέζομαι
<i>plot against</i> , ἐπιθυουλεύω, Dat.	<i>prevent</i> , κωλύω, εἴργω
<i>plunder</i> , booty, λεία	nothing prevents, etc., οὐδὲν έμποδών ἔστιν, etc. See p. 160
<i>poet</i> , ποιητής	<i>prison</i> , δεσμωτήριον
<i>point</i> ,—on the point of, all but,	<i>prisoner</i> , δεσμώτης
ὅσον οὐκ	(of war), αἰχμάλωτος
<i>politics</i> , τὰ τῆς πόλεως πράγματα	<i>private</i> , ιδιος
<i>Polynices</i> , Πολυνείκης, -ους	privately, ιδίᾳ
<i>Polyphemus</i> , Πολύφημος	<i>prize</i> , αἴθλον
<i>ponder</i> , φροντίζω	<i>probably</i> , κατὰ τὸ εἰκός
<i>poor</i> , πένης	<i>promise</i> , ὑπισχνέομαι. See p. 51
<i>poorly</i> , badly, φαύλως	
<i>Poseidon</i> , Ποσειδῶν, -ῶνος	
<i>position</i> (military), χωρίον	
take up a position, intrans.	
tenaces of καθίστημι	
<i>possess</i> , κέκτημαι	

<i>properly</i> , ἐπιεικῶς	<i>raze</i> , καθαιρέω
<i>property</i> , κτήματα, χρήματα	<i>reach</i> , προσέρχομαι πρός, Acc., ἀφικνόμαι πρός, Acc.
<i>prophet</i> , μάντις	<i>read</i> , ἀναγιγνώσκω
<i>propose</i> . See <i>advise</i>	<i>ready</i> , ἔτοιμος
<i>prosper</i> (<i>of persons</i>), εὐτυχέω	<i>reality</i> , — <i>in reality</i> , ἔργω, ἀληθῶς
(<i>of things</i>), προχωρέων, κατόρθωσθαι	<i>reap the fruits of</i> , κομζω τοὺς καρπούς
<i>provide</i> , πορίζω, παρέχω	<i>reasonable</i> , to be, εἰκός εἶναι
<i>provisions</i> , τὰ ἐπιτήδεια	<i>rebel</i> , Intrans. tenses of ἀφίεστημι
<i>provoke</i> , παροξύνω	<i>rebuke</i> , ἐπιτιμάω, Dat.
<i>prudent</i> , σώφρων, φρόνιμος	<i>receive</i> , λαμβάνω, δέχομαι
<i>publicly</i> , δημοσίᾳ	<i>recover</i> , ἀναλαμβάνω
<i>pull</i> , ἐπισπάω	<i>reduce</i> , subdue, καταστρέφομαι (bring over to one's side), προσάγομαι
<i>punish</i> , κολάζω, ζημιώω, τιμωρέομαι: δίκας λαμβάνω παρά, Gen. be punished, δίκας δίδωμι	<i>reflect</i> , φροντίζω, ἐνθυμέομαι
<i>punishment</i> , ζημία	<i>refrain</i> , ἀπέχομαι. See p. 160
<i>pursue</i> , διώκω	<i>refuge</i> , — <i>take refuge in</i> , καταφεύγω
<i>put back to shore</i> , κατάγομαι	<i>refuse</i> , οὐκ ἔθελω, οὐ φημι
<i>put in</i> (<i>of ships</i>), προσέχω εἰς	<i>regard</i> , — <i>with regard to</i> , περὶ, Gen.
<i>put to flight</i> , τρέπω	<i>reinforcements</i> , βοήθεια, βοηθός
<i>put off</i> , ἀναβάλλω	<i>rejoice</i> , χαίρω, ήδομαι. See p. 123
<i>Pydna</i> , Πύδνη, f.	<i>relate</i> , ἔξηγέομαι
<i>Pylos</i> , Πύλος	<i>release</i> (<i>for ransom</i>), ἀπολυτρόω
<i>pyre</i> , πυρά	<i>remain</i> , μένω, καταμένω, ἐπιμένω
<i>Pyrrhus</i> , Πύρρος	<i>remember</i> , μέμνημαι, Gen.
<i>Pythia</i> (<i>priestess of Apollo</i>), Ηνύθια.	<i>remind</i> , ἀναμιμήσκω

»

Q

<i>queen</i> , βασίλεια
<i>quick</i> , ταχύς (adverb ταχέως)
<i>quiet</i> , keep quiet, ήσυχάζω, ήσυχανέχω.

R

<i>race</i> , γένος	<i>repulse</i> , ἀποκρούομαι
<i>rank</i> (<i>of army</i>), τάξις	<i>reputation</i> , δόξα
<i>ransom</i> , λύματα	<i>request</i> , αἰτέω
<i>rashly</i> , ἀσκεπτῶς	<i>resist</i> , ἀμύνομαι. See p. 14. ἀνθετάμαι, Dat.
<i>rather than</i> , μᾶλλον ἢ	<i>resolutely</i> , θαρραλέως
<i>ratify</i> , κυρώω	

resolve, υσε δοκεῖ. See p. 128
resources, χρήματα
responsible, αἴτιος
rest, *the rest*, οἱ ἄλλοι
rest (verb), ἀναπάνομαι
restore, *give back*, ἀποδίθωμι
restrain, ἀπέχω, κατέχω, κωλύω.
 See p. 160
result, ἀποβαίνω
retreat, ἀναχωρέω
 retreat before, ὑπεξέρχομαι
return, ἀπέρχομαι, ἐπανέρχομαι,
 ήκω
 (esp. from exile), κάτειμι,
 κατέρχομαι
revolt, ἀφίσταμαι. Voc. 57
 cause to revolt, ἀφίστημι
reward, μισθός
Rhodian, Ῥόδιος
rich, πλούσιος
riches, πλούτος
ride, ἔλανω
right, just, δίκαιος
right (haul, etc.), δεξιός
 on the right wing, ἐπὶ δεξιῷ
risk, run the risk of, κινδυνεύω
 (Inf.)
risk (stake), παραβάλλομαι
river, ποταμός
roar, βρυχάομαι
rob, ἀφαιρέομαι, double Acc.;
 ἀποστέρω, double Acc. or Acc.
 of person, Gen. of thing
robber, λῃστής
Roman, Ῥωμαῖος
room, θάλαμος
rope, σχοινὸν
round, περί, Acc.
roul, τρέπω
rule, ἀρχω, Gen.
 (noun), ἀρχή
rulers, οἱ ἀρχοντες, οἱ ἐν τέλει

run, τρέχω
run, — at a run, δρόμῳ
 run forward, προθέω
 about, διαθέω.

S

sacrifice, θύω
safe, ἀσφαλής, Adv. ἀσφαλῶς
 get safe to, escape safely to,
 σώζομαι εἰς
safely, ἀσφάλεια
 in safety, ἐν ἀσφαλείᾳ
sail, πλέω
 away, ἀποπλέω
 out, ἐκπλέω
 (set sail), αἴρω
sailor, ναύτης
sake, for the sake of, ἔνεικα, Gen.
Salamis, Σαλαμῖς, -ίνος, f.
same, ὁ αὐτός
 at same time as, ἅμα, Dat.
sand, ψάμμος
Sardis, Σάρδεις, -εων
satrap, σατράπης
saw, σῶζω
say, λέγω, etc. Voc. 41
scarcely, μόλις
scatter (trans.), διασκεδάννυμι;
 (intrans.), διασπείρομαι or δια-
 σκεδάννυμαι
scout, κατάσκοπος
Scythians, Σκύθαι
sea, θάλασσα; (open sea), πόντος;
 by sea, κατὰ θάλασσαν
sea-coast, παραλία
second, δεύτερος
 a second time, τὸ δεύτερον
secretary, ἐπιστολεύς
secretly, λάθρᾳ, or use λανθάνω.
 See p. 123
see, ὄράω
seek, ζητῶ

<i>seem</i> , δοκέω, φαίνομαι	<i>sight</i> ,— <i>catch sight of</i> , καθοράω
<i>seems good</i> , δοκεῖ	<i>silver</i> , ἀργυρός
<i>seize</i> , συλλαμβάνω	<i>simultaneously</i> , ἅμα
<i>self</i> , αὐτός. See p. 38	<i>since (of cause)</i> , δτι, ἐπει. See p. 90
<i>sell</i> , ἀποδίδομαι, πωλέω	(<i>of time</i>), ἐξ οὗ. See p. 150
<i>senate</i> , βουλή	<i>sing</i> , ἄρδω
<i>senile</i> , πέμπτω	<i>single</i> , ἀπλοῦς
<i>buck</i> , ἀποπέμπω	<i>sister</i> , ἀδελφή
<i>out</i> , ἐκπέμπω	<i>skillful</i> , ἐπιστήμων; adv. ἐπιστη-
<i>forward</i> , προπέμπω	μόνως
<i>for</i> , μεταπέμπομαι, προσκαλέω	<i>skillful in</i> , ἐπιστήμων, (Gen.)
<i>separate</i> , ἀπαλλάσσω. See p. 68	<i>skill</i> , τέχνη
<i>serve</i> , ἀφελέω	<i>skin</i> (<i>wineskin</i> , etc.), ἀσκός
(as a <i>soldier</i>), στρατεύω	<i>slave</i> , δοῦλος
<i>set free</i> , λύω, ἀφίημι	<i>slavery</i> , δουλεία
<i>set out</i> (see <i>start</i>)	<i>sleep</i> , ὑπνός
<i>set sail</i> , αἴρω	(Verb), καθεύδω
<i>set up</i> , ἴστημι, transitive tenses	<i>lothful</i> , <i>to be</i> , ῥᾳθυμέω
<i>settle</i> , διατίθεμαι: (<i>by discussion</i>),	<i>slow</i> , βραδύς; adv. βραδέως
διακρίνομαι	<i>small</i> , μικρός
<i>shame</i> , αἰσχύνη	<i>smoke</i> , καπνός
<i>shameless</i> , ἀναίσχυντος	<i>snow</i> , χιών
<i>share</i> , μετέχω. See p. 70	<i>so</i> , οὕτως
<i>give a share of</i> , μεταδίδωμι	(<i>consequently</i>), οὖν, 2nd word;
<i>sharp</i> , δέξις	ώστε, 1st word
<i>shepherd</i> , ποιμήν	<i>to be so</i> , οὕτως ἔχειν
<i>shield</i> , ἀσπίς	<i>so great</i> , τοσοῦτος
<i>ship</i> , ναῦς	<i>so greatly</i> , τοσοῦτο(ν), adv. Λcc.,
<i>shot</i> , βάλλω	or ἐς τοσοῦτον
(arrows), τοξεύω	<i>so that</i> (<i>consequence</i>), ὡστε. See
<i>shore</i> , ἀκτή	p. 100
<i>show</i> , ἀποδείκνυμι	Socrates, Σωκράτης, -ους
<i>shrink from</i> , ἀποκνέω	<i>soldier</i> , στρατιώτης
<i>shoulder at</i> , ἀποκνέω	Solon, Σόλων, -ωνος
<i>shut up</i> (<i>imprison</i>), εἱργω	<i>some . . . others</i> , οἱ μὲν . . . οἱ δὲ . . .
<i>sick</i> (<i>to be</i>), νοσέω	<i>sometimes</i> , ἐντοτε
<i>side</i> ,— <i>on the side of</i> , μετά, Gen.	<i>son</i> , γιός
<i>to be on the side of</i> , <i>fight for</i> ,	<i>soon</i> , δι' ὀλίγου, οὐ διὰ πολλοῦ,
<i>συμάχομαι</i> , Dat.	τάχα
<i>from all sides</i> , πανταχόθεν	<i>sophist</i> , σοφιστής
<i>siege</i> , πολιορκία	<i>sortie</i> , ἐκδρομή
<i>take by siege</i> , ἐκπολιορκέω	<i>soul</i> , ψυχή

<i>spare</i> , φεύδομάι, Gen.	<i>stream</i> , ρόντς (ρόδος)
<i>Sparta</i> , Σπάρτη	<i>street</i> , ὁδός
<i>Spartans</i> , Δακέδαιμονιοι	<i>strength</i> (<i>to have</i>), ισχύω
<i>Spartan aristocracy</i> , Σπαρτιάται	<i>strive for</i> , ἐρίζω περί, Gen.
<i>speak</i> , λέγω	<i>strong</i> , ισχυρός
<i>speak to</i> , converse with, διαλέγομαι, Dat.	<i>suhdue</i> , καταστρέφομαι
<i>speak evil of</i> , κακὰ λέγειν.	<i>subj ect</i> , ὑπήκοος, Gen.
See p. 74	<i>succeed</i> (<i>of things</i>), προχωρεῖν, κατορθοῦσθαι
<i>speak well of</i> , εὖ λέγειν. See p. 74	<i>success</i> , without success, ἀπρακτος
<i>spear</i> , αἰχμῆ	<i>successful</i> , εὐτυχής
<i>speedily</i> , ταχέως, διὰ τάχους	<i>such</i> , τοιοῦτος
<i>spend</i> , ἀναλίσκω, δαπανάω (<i>of time</i>), διάγω	<i>such a thing</i> , τὸ τοιοῦτον <i>to such a pitch of</i> , ἐς τοσοῦτο, with Gen.
<i>spring</i> , ἥπαρ	<i>suddenly</i> , ἐξαίφνης, ἄφνω
on the return of spring, ἅμα	<i>suffer</i> , πάσχω
<i>stable</i> , στάδιον. Voc. 20	<i>sufficient</i> , ίκανός
<i>stand</i> , ξτῆται	<i>to be sufficient</i> , ἀποχρήγη (ἀποχράω)
<i>up</i> , intransitive tenses and middle of ἀνίστημι	<i>suicide</i> , commit suicide, βιάζεσθαι
<i>start</i> , ἀπειμι, ἀφορμάομαι; (<i>of armies, etc.</i>) αἴρω	ἐντόν
<i>stale</i> , πόλις, τὸ κοινόν	<i>summer</i> , θέρος
<i>stature</i> , μέγεθος	in summer, etc. See p. 23
<i>steadily</i> , βεβαίως	<i>summon</i> , καλέω, προσκαλέω, μεταπέμπομαι
<i>steal</i> , κλέπτω	<i>summon home from exile</i> , κατάγω
<i>still</i> , ἔτι	<i>sun</i> , ἥλιος
(= nevertheless), μέντοι, δημως	at sunset, ἡλίῳ καταδύντι
<i>stone</i> , λίθος	<i>superior</i> , κρέστσων
made of stone, λιθινός	<i>be superior to</i> , διαφέρω, Gen.
<i>stop</i> (<i>trans.</i>), παύω, κωλύω. See p. 160	<i>pliant</i> , ικέτης
(<i>intrans.</i>), παύομαι. See pp. 14 and 123	<i>supremacy</i> , ἡγεμονία
<i>storm</i> , χειμῶν	<i>surely</i> (<i>in questions</i>), πῶς οὖ. See p. 58 n.
<i>storm</i> (<i>Verb</i>), κατὰ κράτος (βίᾳ)	<i>surrender</i> (<i>trans.</i>), παραδίδωμι
αἵρεω	(<i>intrans.</i>), ἐνδίδωμι
<i>strange</i> , δεινός	<i>surround</i> , περιέχω, κυκλώ
(<i>foreign</i>), βάρβαρος	<i>survive</i> , περιγγομαι, Gen.
<i>stranger</i> , ξένος	<i>Susa</i> , Σοῦσα, n. pl.
<i>stratagem</i> , δόλος	<i>sustenance</i> , τροφή

sweat, δμυνμι. See p. 51

sweet, ήδύς

swim, νέω

out, ἐκνέω

sword, ἔιφος

Syracuse, Συράκουσαι

Syracusian, Συρακόσιος.

T

take, λαμβάνω, αἱρέω. (In Passive sense ἀλτοκομαι is also used)

(*receive*), δέχομαι

take place, happen, γίγνομαι

talk, λέγω

talk nonsense, φλυαρέω

task, ἔργον

teach, διδάσκω

tell, λέγω, etc. Voc. 41

a story, μυθολογέω

temple, νέώς

terms, on these terms, etc. ἐπι, Dat.

come to terms, συμβαίνω

bring to terms, ἀναγκάζειν περὶ
 ἀπαλλαγῆς πράσσειν

terrible, δεινός

terrify, φοβέω, ἐκπλήσσω

thank, be thankful, χάριν έχω. See
p. 70

Thebes, Θῆβαι

Thebans, Θηβαῖοι

Themistocles, Θεμιστοκλῆς, -έους

then, τότε, ἐνταῦθα

 = *therefore*, οὖν (2nd word),
 τούννυ (2nd word)

 = *next*, ἕπειτα

there, ἐκεῖ

therefore, οὖν (2nd word); πρὸς
ταῦτα (with Imperatives)

Thermopylae, Θερμοπύλαι

think, νομίζω, οἴομαι, ἡγέομαι
(*think right*), ἀξίω
(*ponder*), φροντίζω

thither, ἐκεῖστε

Thrace, Θράκη

Thracian, Θρᾷξ

threaten, ἀπειλέω, Dat.

throng, δχλος

through, διά, (en.

 (*all round, throughout*), περὶ,
 Acc.

 (*by means of*), Dat. or διά,
 Gen. • •

throughout, ἀνά, Acc.; περὶ, Acc.

throw, βάλλω

 αἰσχυ, ρίπτω

Thucydides, Θουκυδίδης, -ου

Thurians, Θούριοι

thus, οὕτως, ἀδε. See Voc. 59

tie, δέω

till (Prep.), μέχρι, Gen.

 (Conj.), έως, etc. See p. 150

time, χρόνος

time, — after a short time, δι' δλίγου,
 οὐ διὰ μακροῦ

 in time, at the right time, ἐ^ταιρόν,
 ἐν καιρῷ

 in the time of, ἐπι, Gen.

 in later times, χρόνῳ ὑστερον

tired, to be, ἀποκάρνω

Tiresias, Τειρεσίας, -ου

Tissaphernes, Τισσαφέρνης, -ους

to, πρός, εἰς, Acc.; (of persons) ὡς,
 Acc.

to-day, τῇμερον

to-morrow, αὔριον, or ἡ αὔριον

too (excessively), λίαν. See p. 100

tooth, ὀδούς

touch, ἀπτομαι, Gen.

towards, πρός, Acc.; ἐπι, Gen.

town, ἄστυ

train, παιδεύω

traitor, προδότης

treachery, προδοσία

treat, χράομαι, Dat.

treat well, badly, εὖ, κακῶς δρᾶν
(Passive πάσχειν). See p. 74

treaty, σπονδαῖς

make a treaty with, σπονδᾶς
ποιεῖσθαι πρός, Acc.

tree, δένδρον

trench, τάφρος

trial. See try

tribe, φῦλον

tribute, φόρος

Trojans, Τρῶες

trophy, τρόπαιον

Troy, Τροία

true, ἀληθῆς

trust, πιστεύω, Dat.

trustworthy, πιστός

truth, ἀλήθεια, τὸ ἀληθές

speak truth, ἀληθεύω

try, πειράομαι

(put on trial), κρίνω, ἐσ κρίσιν
καθιστάναι

*turn away, (intrans.), ἀποστρέ-
φομαι*

turn out, result, ἀποβαίνω

tyrant, τύραννος.

U

Ulysses, Ὀδυσσεύς, -εως

*unable, — be unable, οὐ δύναμαι,
οὐκ ἔχω with Inf.; οὐχ οἶδε τέ
ειμι, etc., with Inf.*

uncover, ἐκκαλύπτω

under, ὑπό. See p. 236

*undergo, πάσχω, intrans. tenses of
ἔφεστημι*

understand, συνίημι

*undertake, ἀντιλαμβάνω, Gen.;
ἐπιχειρέω, Dat.*

*unexpectedly, ἀπροσδοκήτως, or
αιτ. ἀπροσδοκῆτος*

unfortunate, δυστυχής

unguarded, ἀφύλακτος, ἔρημος

unjust, ἀδικος

unobserved, λάθρᾳ, or use λανθάνω.

See p. 123

unpleasant, δυσχερής

unprepared, ἀπροσδόκητος

until (prep.), μέχρι, Gen.

(conj.), ζως (ἄν), etc. See p.

150

unwilling, ἄκων

up, ἀνά. See p. 232

uproar, θόρυβος

urge, πειθω

use, χράομαι, Dat.

useful, χρήσιμος

*usual,—as was usual, κατὰ τὸ
εἰλιθός*

almost, ἔσχατος

utterly, κατ' ἄκρας.

V

vainly, in vain, μάτην

*vengeance,—take vengeance on,
τιμωρέομαι*

very, μάλα, σφόδρα

reced, be reced, δεινὸν ποιέομαι

victorious, to be, νικάω

victory, νίκη

virtue, ἀρετή

voice, φωνή

vote, ψηφίζομαι

voyage, πλοῦς.

W

wait, μένω, ἔπεχω

wall, τεῖχος

wander, πλανάομαι

want (Noun), ἀπορία, έγδεια

(need), be in want, δέομαι,

ἀπορέω, Gen.

<i>war, πόλεμος</i>	<i>whole, πᾶς, ολός</i>
<i>be at war, πολεμέω</i>	<i>why? τι; διὰ τί;</i>
<i>make war upon, πόλεμον ἐπι-</i>	<i>wife, γυνή</i>
φέρω, Dat.	<i>wild beast, θηρίον</i>
<i>warn, νουθετέω</i>	<i>willing (to be), θελω</i>
<i>waste (time), διατρίβω</i>	<i>willingly, ἔκών</i>
<i>watch, τηρέω</i>	<i>willingly at least, ἔκών εἶναι</i>
<i>water, ήδωρ</i>	<i>win, φέρομαι, κτάομαι</i>
<i>wave, κύμα</i>	<i>wind, ἄνεμος</i>
<i>way, ὁδός</i>	<i>wine, οἶνος</i>
(manner), τρόπος	<i>wing (of army), κέρας</i>
<i>weak, ἀσθενής</i>	<i>on the right (left) wing, ἐπὶ</i>
<i>weapon (missile), βέλος</i>	<i>δεξιᾷ (ἀριστερᾷ)</i>
<i>weep, κλαίω</i>	<i>winter, χειμῶν</i>
<i>welcome, ἀσπάζομαι</i>	<i>in winter, etc. See p. 23</i>
<i>well (adv.), εὖ</i>	<i>wisdom, σοφία; (good sense), φρό-</i>
to be well (of things), καλῶς	νησίς
ἔχειν	<i>wise, σοφός, φρόνιμος</i>
<i>well, φρέαρ</i>	<i>wish, βούλομαι, θέλω</i>
<i>what, what sort of. See p. 59</i>	<i>with, μετά, Gen.</i>
<i>whatever, of whatever kind, δποιος.</i>	often translated by ξχων,
See p. 148	ἄγων. See p. 123
<i>when, ἐπει, ἐπειδή, θτε. See p. 150</i>	<i>without, ἀνεν, Gen.</i>
and Voc. 136 n.	<i>woman, γυνή</i>
(Interrogative), πότε;	<i>wonder (at), θαυμάζω</i>
<i>whenever, ὅποτε, εἰ ποτε. See</i>	<i>wooden, ξύλινος</i>
pp. 148, 150	<i>word, λόγος</i>
<i>where (Relative), οὗ, δπου</i>	<i>work, ἔργον</i>
(Interrogative), ποῦ;	<i>world, γῆ</i>
<i>where from, whence, πόθεν, etc.</i>	<i>worn out, to be, ἀποκάμνω</i>
See p. 59	<i>worsted, to be, ήσσάομαι</i>
<i>where to, whither, ποῖ, etc.</i>	<i>worthy, δξιος</i>
See p. 59	<i>wound, τραῦμα</i>
<i>wherever, δπου, εἰ που. See p. 148</i>	(Verb), τραυματίζω, τιτρώσκω
<i>wherefore, τι; διὰ τι;</i>	<i>wrap up, ἐγκαλύπτω</i>
<i>whether, πότερον, εἰ. See p. 62</i>	<i>wreck, ναυάγιον</i>
and note	<i>write, γράφω, συγγράφω</i>
<i>while, ἔως. See p. 150</i>	poetry, ποίεω
<i>whither, οὗ, δποι</i>	<i>writer, historian, συγγραφές</i>
(Interrogative), ποῖ;	<i>wrong, κακός, ἀδικός</i>
<i>who. See p. 59</i>	do wrong to, ἀδικέω
<i>whoever, δπτις, εἰ τις. See p. 148</i>	

Xen- GREEK EXERCISES—GENERAL VOCABULARY

X	
<i>Xenophon</i> , Ξενοφῶν, -ῶντος	<i>yet</i> , ἔτι <i>not yet</i> , οὔπω
Y	
<i>year</i> , ἔτος, ἐνιαυτός	<i>yield</i> , (trans.), παραδίδωμεν (intr.), ἐνδίδωμεν
<i>every year</i> , δύο ἔτη, κατὰ ἔτος	<i>young</i> , νέος
<i>twice a year</i> , δὶς τοῦ ἐνιαυτοῦ	<i>youth</i> , νεανίας

INDEX

A

	PAGES
Accents	239-243
Accusative—	
Verbs taking two Accusatives	74
Accusative of Respect	"
Adverbial Accusative	"
Absolute	128
Denoting Time and Space	23
Adjectives, two with one Noun	79, <i>note</i>
Agent and Instrument	18
Agent expressed by Dative	130
Agreement of Adjectives and Verbs	8
Article—	
Denoting Classes	1
With Abstract Nouns and Proper Names	"
With Adjectives and Adverbs	"
With Participles	1, 163
Position of	4
As Pronoun	40

C

Causal Clauses	90, 122
Commands—	
Direct	78
Indirect	82
Comparative Clauses	123
Comparison	26

						PAGES
Composite Subject	.	.	.	.	.	8, <i>note</i>
Compound Verbs	.	.	.	.	.	229-231
Compound Numbers	.	.	.	.	.	24, <i>note</i>
Concessive Clauses	.	.	.	.	.	122
Conditional Sentences	.	.	.	.	.	112-114
In Oratio Obliqua	.	.	.	.	.	178, 179
Connection	.	.	.	.	.	44, 45
Consecutive Clauses	.	.	.	.	.	100

D

Dative—

Possessor	.	.	.	.	.	72
After Impersonal Verbs	.	.	.	.	.	72, 128
Association or Advantage	.	.	.	.	.	72
Respect	.	.	.	.	.	"
Instrument	.	.	.	.	.	18
Agent	.	.	.	.	.	130
Measure of Difference	.	.	.	.	.	27, <i>note</i>
Denoting Time	.	.	.	.	.	23
Denying, Verbs of	.	.	.	.	.	160

E

Exhortations	78
--------------	---	---	---	---	---	----

F

Fearing, Verbs of	.	.	.	.	.	98
Final Sentences	.	.	.	.	.	94
Forbidding, Verbs of	.	.	.	.	.	160

G

Genitive—

After Comparatives	.	.	.	.	.	26
Absolute	.	.	.	.	.	34
After Verbs	.	.	.	.	.	68, 70
Denoting Time	.	.	.	.	.	23
Graphic Sequence	.	.	.	.	.	48, <i>note</i>

H

Hindering, Verbs of	PAGES 160
----------------------------	---	---	---	---	--------------

I

Impersonal Verbs	.	.	.	.	72, 128
Indefinite Construction	.	.	.	.	148
Indirect Statement	.	.	.	.	48-52
„ Command	.	.	.	.	62
„ Question	.	.	.	.	82
„ Subordinate Clauses	.	.	.	.	84
„ Conditional Sentences	.	.	.	.	178, 179
Infinitive —					
With the Article	.	.	.	.	1, 186
In Indirect Statement	.	.	.	.	50
In Indirect Command	.	.	.	.	62
After Verbs of Preventing, etc.	.	.	.	.	160
In Consecutive Clauses	.	.	.	.	100
After <i>πρίν</i>	.	.	.	.	150
Prolate and Object Infinitives	.	.	.	.	186
Expressing Purpose	.	.	.	.	"
After certain Adjectives	.	.	.	.	"
Summary of Uses	.	.	.	.	"
Instrument	.	.	.	.	18
Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs	.	.	.	.	59

L

Locative Case	20
----------------------	---	---	---	---	----

M

Middle Voice	.	.	.	.	14
Mood, sequence of	.	.	.	.	94, note

N

Negatives	80, 162-3
------------------	---	---	---	---	-----------

	O	PAGES
Optative—		
Wishes referring to Future		78
In Conditional Sentences		114, 178-9
In Final Sentences		94
With verbs of Fearing		98
In Indefinite Sentences		148
In Indirect Questions		62
In Deliberative Questions		"
In Indirect Statements		48
In Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Speech		84
Future Optative		92
Summary of Uses		170

Oratio Obliqua. See Indirect Statement, etc.

	P	
Particles		237-8
Participles—		
Article with		1, 163
Tenses in		12
Negatives with		163
In Indirect Statement		52
Expressing Purpose		94
Cause or Ground of Action		122
Concessive		"
Comparative		"
Use of <i>έχων</i> and <i>άγων</i>		"
Following certain Verbs (<i>τυγχάνω</i> , <i>θέλω</i> , etc.)		"
Place		20
Precaution, Verbs of		98
Prepositions, Common Prose Usages of		231-235
Exercises on		139-141
Preventing, Verbs of		160
Pronouns—		
<i>αὐτός</i>		38
Demonstrative		40, 133
Article as Pronoun		"

Possessive	.	.	.	.	.	.	41
Interrogative	.	.	.	.	.	.	59
Reflexive	.	.	.	.	.	.	133
Relative	.	.	.	.	.	.	134
<i>θετις</i> in Final Clause	.	.	.	.	.	.	94
Relative Attraction	.	.	.	.	.	.	134
Predicate Position	.	.	.	.	.	.	135
Summary of Uses	.	.	.	.	.	.	133-135

Q**Questions--**

Direct	.	.	.	.	.	.	58
Deliberative	.	.	.	.	.	.	59
Indirect	.	.	.	.	.	.	62

S

Sequence of Mood	.	.	.	.	.	.	48
Space, extent of	.	.	.	.	.	.	23
Subjunctive--							
Exhortations	.	.	.	.	.	.	78
Prohibitions	.	.	.	.	.	.	"
Deliberative Questions	.	.	.	.	.	.	62
Final Sentences	.	.	.	.	.	.	94
* After Verbs of Fearing	.	.	.	.	.	.	98
In Conditional Sentences	.	.	.	.	.	.	113-4, 179
Indefinite Sentences with <i>δη</i>	.	.	.	.	.	.	148
Summary of Uses	.	.	.	.	.	.	170

T

Temporal Clauses	.	.	.	.	.	.	150-1
Tenses	-						
In Indicative	.	.	.	.	.	.	10
In Participles	.	.	.	.	.	.	12
In other Moods	.	.	.	.	.	.	92
Time	.	.	.	.	.	.	23

	PAGES
V	
Verbal Adjectives	130
Vocabularies—	
Special Exercises	197-222
General	244-266
W	
Wishes—	
For Future	78
For Present and Past	176

